

MUNPIA



BREAKERS 취룡 퓨전 판타지 장편소설

# 브레이커즈 1

# **Breakers**

**- 브레이커즈 -**

**- Part 1 -**

**-Author-  
Chwiryong**

**[ Rainbow Turtle (Wuxiaworld) ]**

## - STORY -

My name is Joo In-gong. The name that my parents gave me meant 'protagonist' of the world. Really?

As anyone can predict, I was constantly teased due to my name. In kindergarten, elementary school, middle school and high school. If I went to university as planned then I would probably be laughed at there as well.

So, at one point, I really hated my name.

But not anymore. Now, I think slightly differently. Maybe being named Joo In-gong was a type of foreshadowing?

# Chapter 1

## Prologue

My name is Joo In-gong. The name that my parents gave me meant ‘protagonist’ of the world.

As anyone can predict, I was constantly teased due to my name.

In kindergarten, elementary school, middle school and high school.

If I went to university as planned then I would probably be laughed at there as well.

So, at one point, I really hated my name.

But not anymore. Now, I think slightly differently. Maybe being named Joo In-gong was a type of foreshadowing?

[Name: Shutra]

[Age: 17]

[Species: Gandharva]

[Occupation: Protagonist]

[Uniqueness: Prince, Conquest Knight]

This shows my situation on the Assenbah Continent at a glance.

My name is Joo In-gong.

A protagonist.

# Chapter 2

## Entry #1

Remake.

Old movies, music, games and novels were recreated again.

Joo In-gong, who had his university admission tests right around the corner, took a deep breath. The black bag in his hand contained a game that had just been released today.

A remake of Knight Saga, Knight Saga: Re.

Knight Saga was Joo In-gong's favourite game. Due to the fact that it was the best hit of the production company Taro Soft, there were rumours a remake wouldn't come out unless Taro Soft was in a crisis. Yet, to everyone's surprise, a remake was released unexpectedly.

It wasn't just a remake. The number of playable characters increased from two to twelve and it was changed from a regular RPG to a virtual reality game.

In-gong stared at the virtual reality device, which had artificial settings, that he had been given as a gift and took a deep breath with a pious expression.

He had cleared Knight Saga more than 10 times, so there was nothing he didn't know about the characters, special items, hidden events and so on. However, this wasn't Knight Saga but Knight Saga: Re.

In-gong was happy to read the manual. He checked the website every day but there wasn't much new content revealed. However, true fans enjoyed small things like this.

Knight Saga was a story about two sides, humans and demons. The protagonist on the human side was Locke, who was born and raised in a temple. The main character on the side of the demons was Zephyr Ragnaros, the son of the Demon King.



Either way, the progression of the game was similar. The main character traveled around the world leveling up, collecting items and gathering subordinates to achieve their purpose.

The purpose of Zephyr was to unify the Demon World and Human World as the Demon King, while Locke's purpose was to slay the Demon King and save the Human World.

Yet, in Knight Saga: Re, the number of characters that could be played had increased significantly.

On the demon side, it was possible to choose other princes and princesses who were originally Zephyr's rivals. On the human side, it was possible to choose Locke's companies or rulers of other countries.

After reviewing the newly added characters, In-gong gazed toward the virtual reality device that was reminiscent of a white tube. Knight Saga: Re had already been installed.

'Okay, shall I play lightly for eight hours today?'

In-gong laid his body down in the virtual reality device and was surrounded by a bright light.

The first thing he saw when he opened his eyes was a roof. Even though it was dark, he was able to see due to the sunlight coming from a hole in the wall.

The boy who was lying down on a folding cot, In-gong, slowly raised his body.

And he smiled with satisfaction.

'Indeed, an RPG hero should always start by waking up in a bed.'

After nodding his head several times, In-gong looked around. His mouth dropped open with admiration.

'Wah, aren't the graphics perfect?'

The various items in the tent looked real. Moreover, the textures of the cushion and blanket in his hands were vivid.

Although virtual reality games had long been commercialized, virtual reality didn't embody real reality. There were limitations to the technology.

'Did Taro Soft consult an alien?'

In-gong muttered as he admired it.

He started touching objects like a person who had just started playing a virtual reality game.

Then when he was looking like a fool...

"I am going inside!"

A voice was heard from outside the tent. In-gong looked up with surprise as a huge man entered the tent.

"Oh."

In-gong was impressed.

The man had well-developed shoulders, arms that reminded him of a gorilla, green skin that couldn't be seen in humans and lips that peeled back to expose some canines.

He belonged to the orc species that often appeared in games with a fantasy genre.

However, In-gong wasn't impressed that the man was an orc.

Just like the items in the tent, the orc seemed real.

'This is almost...no, isn't it completely diligent?'

He would have believed it was real if it weren't for the mini map and various menu buttons in the corner of his vision.

"What are you staring at?"

The orc gruffly asked and In-gong replied bluntly.

"No, the graphics are cool."

"Graphics?"

The orc tilted his head and asked. In-gong once again felt admiration.

'Wah, we can even exchange conversations?'

The development of virtual reality and artificial intelligence were in completely different areas. It was possible to implement realistic graphics through diligence but it was difficult for realistic artificial intelligence to be created with modern technology. Therefore, he couldn't actively have conversations with the NPCs that appeared in virtual reality games - only pre-determined questions were asked in accordance to certain keywords

Yet the orc before In-gong had responded to the word 'graphics'. He might have been designed to react like that to all unspecified keywords but that was still great.

'Did Taro Soft begin torturing aliens? Why weren't these facts advertised?'

Was the marketing aimed at surprise?

'Hey, this doesn't really matter.'

In-gong decided to enjoy the game. The game was as great as expected, so he would just enjoy playing it.

In-gong came to that conclusion and looked at the orc.

'I am nervous.'

The orc in front of him seemed so real, he couldn't open his mouth easily. In the end, In-gong coughed several times before speaking.

"Hum hum. My name is Joo In-gong. What is your name?"

He was awkward about introducing himself, thanks to his name.



The orc frowned at In-gong's question and muttered something. He couldn't hear it very well but it seemed like a curse.

'This bastard, just because my name is Joo In-gong.'

Having artificial intelligence was a good thing but In-gong still didn't like it. No, it would have been nice if a pretty girl, not an orc, had appeared in front of him. A succubus, succubus or succubus.

However, the orc wasn't frowning because of In-gong's name. The orc scratched his head and muttered.

"Carack. I told you that yesterday. And isn't your name Prince Shutra?"

Shutra Ignus. He was the ninth child of the Demon King. He was one of the 12 characters that could be chosen in the game.

'That reminds me, I didn't get to pick my character. Does everyone have to play a demon the first time?'

In-gong recalled the story of Knight Saga: Re that was originally from Knight Saga. He was a prince who was a bit weak and had no power. He was like Yan Baihu from the Three Kingdoms series.

"I will be waiting outside."

The male orc, Carack, clicked his tongue and turned around. In-gong stared at the back of Carack's head.

'I didn't want to start with Shutra.'

He didn't have any dissatisfaction with Shutra himself. His style was just on the other side.

'Can I change the character?'

Knight Sage: Re was a remake but it wasn't the same exact game as Knight Saga. There was no need to select a difficult character on the very first gameplay.

'Would Taro Soft really make the first gameplay a fixed character? There might be a bug or it is my mistake.'

If it was a fixed character, it ought to have been either Zephyr Ragnaros or the warrior Locke who were the main characters.

'I will save and exit the game to search up some information'

The game was just released today but there should be information about the characters.

Moreover, if it was really a bug, Taro Soft would have posted an emergency announcement.

In-gong reached out and touched the menu button located in the corner of his vision. A white light then unfolded before him.

[Name: Shutra Ignus]
[Level: 1] [Age: 14] [Species: Gandharva] [Occupation: Protagonist] [Uniqueness: Prince/ Conquest Knight]
Strength: 5 Intelligence: 5 Agility: 5 Talent: 5 Persistence: 5 Durability: 5 Mental Power: 5 Magic Power: 5 Charm: 5

'As expected from the Yan Baihu of Knight Saga. All the stats are poor.'

An ordinary village person A would have 10 stat points, so his stats were poor

considering his age.

How could a prince be weaker than Villager A?

'By the way, my occupation is a protagonist? Is this really a bug?'

In-gong frowned as he gazed at the buttons next to his status window.

"Eh?"

There was no save or load button. In-gong swallowed his saliva and gazed at the menu window again but it was useless.

'Crazy, there is no button to end the game.'

In-gong urgently tried to call the menu of the virtual reality device itself, however, it didn't work.

The system button for forced termination specific to the device wasn't shown.

'Calm down. Calm down, In-gong.'

In-gong took a deep breath and counted sheep in his head.

'There are two possibilities.'

First of all, he was trapped in a virtual reality.

There was an incredibly deadly bug involved with Taro Soft's software.

From a practical point of view, this was the only possible answer. That possibility wasn't bad for In-gong. If that was the case, there was a chance he would be rescued.

However, In-gong was concerned about other possibilities.

This wasn't a game but reality. Just like a novel or comic book, he had entered the game world or a game-like world.

It really sounded crazy. He couldn't say it despite playing many games.

Yet, there was a reason for In-gong to believe it.

‘It is too real.’

The surrounding sights could only be described as reality.

The orc, Carack, showed intelligent behaviour.

In-gong had said it before.

No matter how much virtual reality games had developed, this level was unreasonable. Could he swallow his saliva and sweat in a game?

In-gong thought it was just a game but the graphics and artificial intelligence indicated that it might not be.

He took one step forward and looked at himself.

There was another more crucial reason.

‘I’m not a Korean.’

He had a conversation with the orc without thinking but now that In-gong thought about it, he hadn’t been speaking Korean. It was a strange language that he shouldn’t have understood.

After covering his face with both hands, In-gong sighed and took off his pants. The reason wasn’t to suddenly expose himself. In-gong took off his underwear and looked at his lower body.

‘There isn’t a mosaic.’

Knight Saga: Re was a game for people 17 years and older but the laws banned showing genitalia. However, his genitalia could clearly be seen.

‘Ah, please.’

In-gong put on his underwear and pants again with a despairing expression and sat

down on the bed.

‘No, if I entered a game, then it should be another game! Eroge, eroge, eroge...damn!’

In-gong counted sheep again and tried to think positively.

‘Yes, at least I’m not a monster character like an orc or ogre. Even if he was referred to as Yan Baihu of Knight Saga, he was still a prince. Someone born with a gold spoon.’

There were many positive aspects.

The characters were introduced on the homepage and Shutra was a handsome person. He couldn’t see his face but his arms were thin and white like a girl’s, so his face must have changed as well.

‘In the worst case scenario, if I have to live here, at least I am a prince. Okay, it isn’t bad. In that sense, it is like winning the lottery. I have regressed to 14 years old!’

He had an infinite power of positivity. The endorphins were squeezed out forcefully but it was enough to bring peace to In-gong’s mind and body.

But as the excitement subsided, rational thoughts entered his mind once again.

‘What happened to Shutra in Knight Saga?’

He was the competitor of the main character, Zephyr, who defeated his opponents and became the devil.

In short, Shutra was Zephyr’s enemy. So, of course, in the game-

‘The Day of the Massacre! A forced event!’

While Locke was an orthodox warrior, Zephyr was an orthodox Demon King. Zephyr was a cold blooded person who killed all his siblings during the event, the Day of the Massacre.

‘He was a madman who killed those on his side as well as his competitors.’

Anyway, if he remembered correctly, Shutra had been hiding. Yet, Zephyr traveled

around the entire Demon World and found him.

‘How old is Zephyr now? How much time is left until the Day of the Massacre?’

There was no answer. Right now, he had too little information. He didn’t even know where this place was.

"A naoshu?"

A ringing voice was heard outside the tent. In-gong tapped his cheeks lightly and stood up.

He didn’t know if this was a game or a world that was like a game but he decided not to worry about it for the moment.

Right now, he needed information.

In-gong prepared his heart and exited the tent.

# Chapter 3

## Entry #2

"Dushu. It is a little late but here is breakfast."

As soon as he stepped out of the tent, Carack was sitting at a foldable table with food on it.

In-gong looked around as he approached Carack's table. There were dozens of tents lined up on a vacant lot the size of an elementary school playground.

'Is this a garrison base in the mountains?'

The blue sky surrounded him. In-gong sat at the table and examined the food. There was a piece of bread on a plate as well as vegetables and meat stew.

'Shutra, he is a prince right?'

He had a moment of doubt but it only lasted for a second. It would have been strange if this campsite was celebrating.

In-gong took a bite of the stew as a test. The taste was ordinary but the important thing wasn't the taste. In-gong was convinced.

'It is real.'

Touch, vision, smell, hearing and even taste, everything around him was shouting that it was real.

"Hoo."

He couldn't stop sighing. In-gong took a deep breath to calm down and asked Carack, who was staring at the distant mountains.

"Carack, what year is it now?"



Carack frowned at the somewhat awkward question. He asked In-gong a question instead of answering.

"Did you have a fever last night?"

In-gong quickly nodded at the question.

"Yes, my head was hurting when I woke up. My memories are confused."

In-gong thought it was a ridiculous story but decided to push it confidently. He still had many questions.

'No, why is an orc treating a prince like this?'

Even if he was a prince, Shutra was known as the Yan Baihu of Knight Saga. He had little power, weak magic power, no friends, no prospects, no subordinates and no chance of becoming the heir.

'He was ignored. Even the country ignored him.'

Moreover, Carack was an orc. Knight Saga's orcs were powerhouses and wouldn't follow a weak prince.

Yet, this orc didn't ignore him. His character itself was just a little rough.

In-gong couldn't ignore the relationship between Carack and Shutra. Carack frowned as he searched through his memories.

"Yes, it is currently Year 512 and we are on the edge of the Jishuka Mountains. Prince, you came here for some practical experience. We just met yesterday."

"Practical experience? Is there a war going on right now?"

Carack's expression changed at In-gong's question. Unlike before, he was looking at In-gong with seriously worried eyes.

"That fever, was it really serious?"

"Just answer me."

In-gong knew that he seemed strange. He was acting like a patient with amnesia.

Luckily, orcs were simple, so Carack continued talking after a moment.

"The Red Lightning orc tribe is causing chaos in the area. They think they can get away with it because they are acting on the outskirts. Anyway, an army was sent to the center and another prince and princess came along. I became in charge of Prince."

"Then where is the other prince and princess?"

"They were each given command of one unit. Prince Chris is in that area while Princess Caitlin is over there."

Chris and Caitlin.

The Demon King's seventh and eighth children. They were the children of the 4th queen, Elaine Moonlight - queen of the lycanthropes.

'They gave me a hard time when I was playing Zephyr.'

Their forces weren't that strong by themselves but the lycanthropes were tricky to deal with. In particular, Chris and Caitlin were uniquely strong among the lycanthropes.

'They are still young.'

He didn't know their exact ages but he was younger than Caitlin and Zephyr. Chris was only a few years older than Caitlin.

"Your meal seems to be finished, so I can start the training again."

Carack said, after looking at the plate of stew. In-gong had been eating breakfast while listening to the explanation and he reached the word 'training.'

"Training?"

It was natural to be affected. This seemed like a realistic game but this situation wasn't

a game.

‘Surely, I don’t have to spar with an orc?’

Carack’s arm muscles were almost the size of Shutra’s waist. It was obvious he would break his bones when sparring with a monster like that.

Carack clicked his tongue as In-gong’s complexion worsened.

“Don’t worry. I know how great Prince is. It will be like yesterday. I am well aware that Prince doesn’t have much physical strength. Oh, I won’t be as hard on you due to the fever.”

He looked In-gong up and down and decided on a course. A simple training course circled the vacant lot where the tents were set up.

After hearing that, In-gong sighed with relief and stood up. It wasn’t a bad proposition since he needed time to sort out his thoughts.

In-gong started to jog lightly.

‘Caitlin and Chris. Is their situation the same as it was in Knight Saga?’

If so, they would become problems in the future. What events would happen soon in Knight Saga?

For reference, Knight Saga started in Year 513. It was currently Year 512, so there would be five years left until the ‘Day of the Massacre’ took place in Year 517.

‘Now that I am living as Shutra... What should I do next?’

Firstly, run away and hide.

Secondly, work hard to become close to Zephyr.

Thirdly, work hard to oppose Zephyr.

Needless to say, he dismissed the first two options. Zephyr killed his enemies and allies unconditionally on the Day of the Massacre. He found and killed the ones hiding

and tortured the siblings who supported him.

There was only one choice remaining.

'Pant pant. By the way, my stamina is so low.'

He had only completed a few laps but was already breathing heavily. Even if he was the Yan Baihu of Knight Saga, wasn't this too terrible? He couldn't face Zephyr with this body.

It was at that moment.

[Your level has risen.]

There was a ringing sound, a woman's voice was heard and his body was surrounded by white light.

"Eh eh eh?"

In-gong blinked his eyes with bemusement. His breath calmed down and strength returned to his legs.

"Prince? What type of magic is that?"

Carack asked with a startled expression.

"Wait, wait a minute."

In-gong raised his hand to stop Carack and looked at himself.

'I will check it once.'

It was absurd that he had leveled up through running but that wasn't the important part.

In other words, it was possible for him to level up. If so, what had changed?

In-gong hurriedly activated his status window.

[Name: Shutra Ignus]

[Age: 14]

[Level: 2]

[Species: Gandharva]

[Occupation: Protagonist]

[Uniqueness: Prince/ Conquest Knight]

Strength: 7

Intelligence: 7

Agility: 7

Talent: 7

Persistence: 7

Durability: 7

Mental Power: 7

Magic Power: 7

Charm: 7

Extra points: 2

‘Heok! All my stats were raised by two?’

His stats were still shabby but that didn’t matter.

‘How much will my stats rise with the next level up? Isn’t this a scam?’

It was like a fraudulent job in Knight Saga.

‘Skills, let’s look at the skill window.’

In-gong’s hands trembled as he opened the skills window.

[Conquest Lv -]

[Protagonist Correction Lv 1]

They were skills that he didn’t know. Moreover, the skill Conquest was deactivated for some reason.

'If Protagonist Correction is what I think it is... Is this right?'

It seemed like a passive skill but unfortunately, there wasn't any explanation.

'And what is Conquest? Ah, that reminds me...'

The uniqueness stated that he was a prince and Conquest Knight. Conquest was obviously a skill related with Conquest Knight.

'My level rose. It also seems like I can use skills.'

It wasn't just that. He hadn't thought about it but features like the mini-map were still active. The finishing strike was the inventory feature.

In-gong instantly picked something up.

'Store.'

He mumbled in reaction. The item in his hand disappeared and appeared in the inventory.

[Stone]

"A success! It worked!"

In-gong formed a fist and cheered.

"Prince?"

Carack called out but In-gong didn't pay attention to him.

He wasn't just excited about the inventory feature.

Shutra was definitely the worst prince but what would happen if he kept leveling up?

The mini-map and inventory features were also amazing. Depending on the way they were used, truly magical things could happen.

There was one more important fact.

‘My knowledge.’

There was no guarantee that all the events that occurred in Knight Saga would happen. Even if they didn’t, there was something that wouldn’t disappear.

Information.

Who and where. The locations of items. The secrets of his competitors. He knew the Human World as well as the Demon World.

‘I can, I can do it!’

He could oppose Zephyr. No, it was possible to become the Demon King!

‘Yes, it is better to go back. But if I can’t, then isn’t it better to move forward?’

His thoughts were running wild but they weren’t wrong.

He had no idea how he came to this world or how to return. Therefore, he needed to find a way to survive.

“Uh...Prince? Are you okay?”

Carack asked with a confused expression once again. In-gong nodded absentmindedly and Carack narrowed his eyes.

“You- there is something different. All of a sudden, you have eyes filled with burning ambition. ”

Maybe he had become too excited.

Thanks to Carack, In-gong regained his spirit.

‘It is still too early. I need more information.’

In-gong looked at Carack and asked something that could solve a number of questions



instantly.

“Carack, what level are you?”

# Chapter 4

## Entry #3

In-gong had a level.

Did the other people in this world have levels?

If levels existed, did they have a way to raise their stats like In-gong did?

After hearing In-gong's question, Carack scratched his chin and replied.

"Uh...I was level 21 the last time I checked. No, level 22? Why do you ask?"

This was a summary of what he learnt.

Levels existed in this world.

However, it was impossible for people to directly check their status window like In-gong.

They didn't know their detailed stats and it was also impossible to distribute additional points.

They could only see their level through a level measurement spell.

The concept of raising their level to become stronger was non-existent. They just trained hard and fought, making their levels increase.

"Then don't I have a great advantage?"

Once In-gong leveled up, not only was his stamina and magic restored but all his stats also rose. Considering that he could allocate additional points, he had tremendous growth potential.

'If he doesn't know about the mini-map or inventory... Can't this be considered my

unique ability?’

Of course, there might be someone else in this world who had been transported after playing Knight Saga: Re. But when comparing In-gong to the people of this world, he had a unique ability.

A smile formed on In-gong’s face.

Although he was now weaker than Villager A, it was only for the moment. If he gained two more levels, each stat would have 11 points! That was stronger than Villager A who had an average of 10 stat points.

‘Considering the extra points, I would be much stronger.’

He couldn’t help feeling pained when thinking about being compared to Villager A. The starting point was so low.

‘Anyway.’

The next important thing was the presence or absence of skills. Magic spells and skills did exist in this world and the process of learning it wasn’t much different from In-gong’s. It was possible to acquire skills by training hard.

‘But I have something different.’

After reaching level two, the extra stat points weren’t the only things he obtained. He also received skill points. Naturally, investing skill points would allow the level of his skills to grow.

“Ohuhu.”

In-gong couldn’t hold back his laughter. Carack was still paying attention but he couldn’t suppress his happiness.

‘Yes, I should have at least this much compensation when arriving in a different world!’

If he didn’t have such compensation, he would just die as Shutra.

Carack frowned as In-gong kept laughing.

"Prince, are you really okay? This state..."

"I'm okay, I'm okay. Rather, I'm very good. Should I continue to run?"

He wondered how many levels he could gain just by running. However, Carack glanced at In-gong and shook his head.

"Um...no. You seem a little strange but you are more energetic than before."

Carack turned and guided In-gong to an open space.

"I heard that Prince can use a sword. Can you show me?"

He was given a wooden sword. It seemed like a toothpick in Carack's hands, but it was heavy to In-gong.

"Uh...you want to see my swordsmanship?"

"Just swing it a few times. I need to know what level you are at."

It was quite a rude demand but Carack didn't seem to be insulting him. The running made it clear that Carack was training him.

'I'm going crazy.'

In reality, In-gong had never learnt kendo. At best, he would playfully spar with friends using a broom when it was cleaning time.

In-gong grasped the wooden sword in a neutral position and took a deep breath. Then he swung the sword like a baseball bat.

[You have learnt Basic Swordsmanship Lv1.]

"Huh?"

In-gong stood there looking at himself instead of swinging the wooden sword. He opened the skills window reflexively and invested his skill points without any

hesitation.

[Basic Swordsmanship Lv2]

There were no physical changes. However, In-gong recognized it instinctively.

'I have changed. No, I've learnt.'

He changed the way he held the sword. He increased the gap between his legs and for the first time, made a clear trajectory with the sword.

"Hmm?"

Carack made a sound. In-gong was enjoying it a little bit and asked,

"What is it?"

"No, your movements are suddenly good."

So, he tilted his head to the side. His face seemed like he had witnessed something incomprehensible.

In-gong couldn't help grinning happily at Carack's reaction.

'Okay, I really can do it.'

He could become stronger. He would move forward faster than anyone else.

This fact was very important. In-gong couldn't do anything unless he was strong.

Let's assume that modern people entered the game world of the Three Kingdoms. How would he become the ruler of one of the three kingdoms?

Of course, he would collect talents. No matter what, he would try to secure Zhuge Liang and Liu Bei.

If he had Zhuge Liang and Sima Yi under his command? Or a team consisting of Guan Yu and Zhang Liao? Zhang Fei and Xu Chu would also be amazing.

But there was one problem. It was meaningless if he didn't know where to find them.

Didn't Liu Bei meet Zhuge Liang in a remote village? Didn't Yan Baihu find Sun Ce in a brothel?

In-gong couldn't say anything. If he had Liu Bei or Zhuge Liang, he would be able to deal with his brother easily.

The Yan Baihu of Knight Saga, Shutra, had to find some good people. Otherwise, he might suffer.

'Therefore, I have to be strong. I must also determine their locations.'

He was the youngest prince who didn't have strength or power. In-gong needed to utilize the information he had to create a position of strength.

[Your level has risen.]

He had kept swinging his sword while thinking. It seemed like he was growing rapidly.

In-gong was one step closer to the stats of Villager A, so he wielded the sword again. His stamina was restored thanks to the level up and he kept wielding the sword for a while.

'Can I reach level 5 if I keep swinging for today and tomorrow?'

Carack said that Shutra came here for practical experience. So he had to raise his level as high as possible before leaving.

'Come to think of it.'

The first encounter. Chris and Caitlin were in charge of different unit. Then was this something like a joint operation?

"Carack, I was wondering something."

"What?"

"Are there any plans to fight? I should have plans for a meeting with Chris and Caitlin."

He thought that a meeting might be a little difficult.

He wasn't In-gong but Shutra in this place.

What if the two people hated him?

'Would it be surprising?'

No, could he change anything in the first place? Wasn't it only his outward appearance that was the same as Shutra?

Something bad could happen. He could use the excuse of a fever with Carack because he was an orc, but Chris and Caitlin were different. He needed to prepare before he met them.

Carack replied to In-gong's question.

"Of course there is a meeting. Don't you remember?"

"No. Anyway, when is it?"

Surely, there wasn't a meeting every day, right?

In-gong stared at Carack who replied bluntly.

"Today."



# Chapter 5

## Entry #4

"No, if it so important, why didn't you tell me until now?"

"You didn't ask and I thought you remembered."

He didn't ask.

Yes, he certainly didn't ask. Carack's reaction was natural. His actions were normal if In-gong had actually remembered!

In-gong sighed and acted rationally instead of bothering Carack about it.

"When is it happening today?"

It was still morning, so it was okay if it was a little 'late'. There was still time if the meeting occurred late in the afternoon or evening.

Carack scratched his chin again and replied.

"Eh... It was decided to do it before lunch, so the meeting is at 11 o'clock."

Rather than thinking about the unit of time in Knight Saga, he zoomed in on the mini-map that had a clock function next to it. It was 9:52 a.m.

'It is one hour away!'

Dammit! Why was he only told just before the meeting?

"Where?"

In-gong asked reflexively and Carack pointed beyond the mountains.

"We decided to do it at Princess Caitlin's location. It is time to go so you should be

prepared.”

It was already like this, so it was impossible to prepare properly.

In-gong calmed his heart and started thinking rationally. What he needed now wasn't swearing or lamentation.

Information. He had to have information.

"Hey, Carack. Do you remember that I'm a little confused because of the fever?"

"Is Prince really okay?"

Carack looked worried again. Despite being a bit clumsy, he didn't seem like a bad guy.

"I'm okay. Anyway, can you tell me about Chris and Caitlin? For example, what I call them."

The honorifics.

When just looking at age, it was natural to call Caitlin by noona and Chris by hyung. But Shutra, Caitlin and Chris were all part of the royal family.

(Noona= what males use for older females.)

(Hyung= what males use for men older than them)

'I don't think I would call them by Hyung or Noona.'

Carack stared at In-gong before saying in a decisive voice.

"I don't know."

"You should have seen it at the meeting!"

"Today is the first meeting. I told you, I only met Prince yesterday."

It was perfect logic. In the end, In-gong lost to the orc's logic and sprang up.

"Okay, let's prepare to depart."

In fact, nothing special was needed to be prepared for the departure. He just needed to wear different clothes.

'This is due to the fever.'

They might think it was strange but he would continue to push the idea.

'I just need to seem okay.'

Of course, there would be some doubts but what could they do? He had Shutra's body!

Carack hadn't moved past In-gong's actions simply because he was an orc.

'Yes, maybe they will just be worried like Carack.'

The crucial part was that Shutra, Chris and Caitlin weren't close friends. They might be worried but not suspicious.

'Or they might not be worried at all.'

In-gong nodded and looked around for a while. Carack was at the front with orcs walking on either side of him.

'Let me think. I will try to reason it out.'

He had cleared Knight Saga from Zephyr's point of view. Therefore, he didn't know the nuances of the relationship between Shutra, Chris and Caitlin.

However, it was possible to reason things out to a certain degree.

Zephyr had little contact with Shutra, Chris and Caitlin as a child. The reasons were different but in Shutra's case, he had always stayed in a corner while Chris and Caitlin barely spent any time at the palace.

Unlike the other queens, Elaine Moonlight, queen of the lycanthropes and mother of Chris and Caitlin, didn't have any ambitions to make her children the Demon King.

Chris and Caitlin were educated at the royal palace of the lycanthropes.

Therefore, the two of them spend most of their childhood in the land of the lycanthropes rather than the Demon King's Palace.

'In other words, Shutra should have had almost no contact with Chris and Caitlin.'

This was probably not the first meeting but there was a high possibility that they hadn't had a conversation before.

'Okay, I will just push forward. I won't care about acting different.'

He had a severe fever and couldn't remember anything. He seemed to have acquired a partial memory loss.

In-gong nodded with a determined expression but he soon found it tough to breathe.

'Pant pant, my body has leveled up but my stamina is still low.'

He was currently level 3. He had nine points in each state but he was still weaker than Villager A. It was hard to climb up the rough mountain trail.

"Almost there. Just have a little more strength."

Carack said with a smile. It seemed that In-gong looked exhausted.

"Yes."

In-gong laughed and stepped forward with difficulty. How far did they walk? The uphill slope gradually calmed to reveal a wide vacant lot.

"We are here."

In-gong stretched and looked around at Carack's words. The vacant lot wasn't empty. It was an army base. It couldn't be compared to In-gong's base and seemed more like a village.

There were dozens of tents lined up in an orderly manner with cheap and permanent grazing grounds.

The soldiers were also different. Dozens of soldiers with the symbol of the lycanthropes seemed to be Caitlin's troops. Everyone was wearing black leather armour and they all looked big and wild.

They were obviously elite soldiers.

The orcs among the elite soldiers also looked different. The orcs were obviously local soldiers and didn't seem much different from In-gong's but they looked stronger and more resilient.

Carack laughed as he saw the tension on In-gong's face.

"It's okay, they are on our side. Isn't it reassuring?"

It seemed like he thought In-gong was frightened by the atmosphere.

"Yes, they are on our side."

In-gong replied lightly but he spoke in a low voice.

Carack knocked his shoulders against In-gong's.

"Let's go inside. That is the meeting place."

Located in the heart of the base was a large tent surrounded by lycanthrope warriors.

'Chris and Caitlin.'

The 7th prince and 8th princess.

Shutra's half siblings.

They were like two wild beasts in front of Zephyr; the lycanthrope monsters.

In-gong swallowed his saliva and entered the tent with Carack.

In-gong was startled by the insides of the tent. The inside and outside of the tent were completely different.

It wasn't an exaggeration to say that the inside of the tent was like a luxurious palace. The floor had fluffy carpets and the walls were decorated with beautiful silks. Despite being inside a tent, it was completely bright.

A gentle light poured from the ceiling and it was reminiscent of stained glass in a cathedral.

There was a circular table located in the middle of the tent. In-gong was an outsider to this world but it still seemed luxurious.

A large map of a battlefield with elaborate models was laid out on the table.

"Please sit here."

A young man wearing the emblem of the lycanthropes guided In-gong toward a seat. It seemed like there were only three seats for In-gong, Chris and Caitlin.

Once In-gong was seated, the young man said with a smile.

"Prince Chris and Princess Caitlin will be coming soon. Please wait a moment."

He had nothing to do but wait. In-gong watched the clock attached to the mini-map. There were 10 minutes left until the scheduled meeting time.

'This is great.'

As expected from Chris and Caitlin.

Shutra was the child of the Demon King but he was different in many ways.

In fact, In-gong didn't have good impressions of Chris and Caitlin. It was because they worked hard to block him whenever he played Zephyr.

It had been a nightmare fighting Chris and Caitlin. He'd been able to save and load the game but he had died many times. That's not even mentioning their soldiers.

As the fight over the succession to the throne deepened, the fighting became more bloody. Sometimes, he barely managed to face them during an event.

Chris had growled at his enemies while Caitlin had watched silently with a frozen face.

'I could call them middle-ranked bosses.'

He now had to meet those two people. If possible, he needed to maintain a friendly relationship with them. In-gong needed allies to face Zephyr.

'I need to oppose Zephyr while stopping others from joining him.'

He sighed as he thought about it. It was like Yan Baihu standing up to his enemies in an isolated area.

"Prince."

Carack's low voice snapped him out of it. He jumped with surprise and heard voices outside the tent.

Chris and Caitlin, the two of them had appeared.

Notes:

The children of the Demon King take their mother's surnames. They will only take the name of their father if they are confirmed as the next king or official heir to the king.

# Chapter 6

## Entry #5

In-gong knew almost all the characters of Knight Saga. So, he knew how Chris and Caitlin looked like.

Nevertheless, he still lost his spirit for a moment.

‘Really pretty.’

Caitlin was the first to come in. She was older than Shutra at 15 years old.

Her small face between dark blue hair was very white and her two golden eyes were like moonlight in the night sky. She wore leather armour that clung to her body as well as a blue cloak.

She stared at In-gong with a cold smile on her face.

They stared at each other for a few seconds.

In-gong was trying to think of something to say when he heard the voice of salvation.

"Go in quickly. Don't block the way."

Chris appeared behind Caitlin and carefully pushed her aside.

Caitlin looked at Chris before sitting down and he just laughed.

Just like Caitlin was pretty, Chris was handsome.

He had golden hair that looked like a lion's mane, while his blue eyes were both playful and wild.

‘Incredibly unbalanced.’



The body below the handsome face was really huge. Looking at the body, he would guess that Chris was 30 years old not 17. The tiger leather that wrapped like a cloak around him made him seem like a bandit.

Once Chris was sitting down, a few people came in and stood behind Chris and Caitlin. The two people seemed to be their escort knights.

‘I already knew but the gap is too big.’

Shutra didn’t have a proper escort knight. Carack was behind him but he was a local warrior, not sworn to Shutra.

‘I used to have lots of subordinates.’

Beautiful succubi escort knights, ogre warriors, the strongest evil necromancer Sektum and so on.

In-gong gritted his teeth as he visualized it. He would think of them all as enemies now.

‘No, I will somehow take them away. I will make those kids listen to me!’

Of course, the trivial fact that he raised them in a game was ignored.

‘Where are those kids now?’

“Prince.”

Carack’s low voice interrupted his thoughts. In-gong recovered his spirit and immediately sat straight.

“It has been a while.”

Caitlin spoke first. Her voice was a little hard and distant.

Chris laughed again.

"It has been a long time but isn't this the first time we are talking face to face? We have never spoken separately to him."

Was this actually the first time? He hadn't talked to them?

'Oh, nice!'

As expected, Shutra didn't have a lot of interactions with Chris and Caitlin. It was as In-gong thought.

Maybe he didn't need to use a fever as an excuse.

"Please feel comfortable. I am your hyung, your hyung. This is not the Demon King's Palace. Speak comfortably, call me hyung."

Chris winked slightly. In-gong was grateful but slightly distracted by the attractive face.

'That Chris, he is a good person.'

The problem of honorifics was solved instantly.

"I understand, Hyung."

Chris laughed at In-gong's words and then pointed to Caitlin.

Chris was hyung. Then what should he called Caitlin?

"Uh...Noona?"

At In-gong's shy (?) words, Caitlin lowered her eyes and pouted slightly. On closer inspection, the corners of her lips were twitching.

'Wait a minute, what is this reaction?'

Surely it was a good thing? Why were her ears turning a little bit red?

Chris laughed again.

"Ya, who is a noona? There is only a few months difference between the both of you."

Caitlin was embarrassed while In-gong was taken aback.

'Are they really Chris and Caitlin? Aren't they mad beasts?'

"I will talk about the operation."

Caitlin interrupted In-gong's thoughts. She stood up and pointed to the map of the battlefield spread out the table with her long fingers.

"Currently, I have identified the location of the Red Lightning tribe. I will be here while Chris oppa will hit here."

The blue models were allies while the red models were enemies.

As he listened to Caitlin's explanations and watched the map, he heard the clear voice of a woman in his head.

[Map Reading Lv1 has been learnt.]

It was like with swordsmanship. It was the same map as before but In-gong could read more things.

'Can I learn other skills this way?'

He had swung the sword and learnt swordsmanship, and he learnt how to read the map after seeing it.

Even though it was only Lv1, he still learnt it. Anyway, the level could be increased by investing skill points.

'Can this be done with magic? If I can use both physical and magical skills at the same time...'

The ultimate multi-class. Indeed, it was the birth of a fraudulent character.

Of course, skill points were limited so he could end up with a mediocre character if he misjudged his choices. However, the possibility of that was low. It was because In-gong was a master of Knight Saga. There were a few synergistic combinations in his head.

"Shutra, you will scout this place."

Caitlin's words interrupted his thoughts. In-gong quickly looked in the direction Caitlin pointed to. It was an area without any red models representing the Red Lightning tribe.

"Scout?"

"Yes, a reconnaissance mission. This is the area where the Red Lightning tribe lived before. When looking at their recent movements, it is unlikely that they would have many troops here. You don't have to be worried."

Caitlin licked her lips and looked at In-gong again.

"I'm sorry for the one-sided notice. Do you have another opinion?"

'Eh?'

Sorry? Another opinion?

What was she saying now?

"It is difficult to say. Hey, Shutra."

Chris called out to In-gong from where he was relaxing in his seat.

"I'm sorry but aren't your troops a little bit weaker than ours? It could be dangerous if you go to the wrong area."

It made a lot of sense. He was the weak Shutra.

"But if you don't do anything, won't it be difficult when we return? Our actions need to be reported. You weren't able to do anything - I don't want to report that."

This also made a lot of sense.

'Wait a minute, perhaps?'

"I wish we could split the troops but then it would be our merit, not yours."

Shutra came here for practical experience. Still, he was a prince, so he was given some troops.

Yet, what would happen if he didn't get any results?

All external activities of the children of the Demon King were scored. Their treatments would differ depending on the results, so it was important to work hard when going somewhere. Shutra's status wasn't that good.

Whether looking at it objectively or subjectively, Shutra was weak. He didn't have any of his own soldiers and was supported by the local orc troop.

Putting him on the front lines would naturally be dangerous.

But he couldn't borrow any troops from Chris and Caitlin. The two of them can let him borrow the lycan troops but the merits were likely to go back to Chris and Caitlin.

It wasn't impossible for him to fight in the front lines. Yet, he would need to pay the cost. He would just have to use his own troops.

"Caitlin has thought hard about this."

Chris grinned happily at Caitlin who was once again tight-lipped.

In-gong alternated looking between them.

'Perhaps...aren't they pretty nice?'

In-gong knew that Chris and Caitlin were monsters. They were blood-crazed monsters.

But was that due to Zephyr?

Moreover, the place where Zephyr mainly encountered Chris and Caitlin was the battlefield. They weren't allies but enemies.

"Then Shutra, what will you do? I'm sure you will do some good work once you start.

This isn't a battle that will end with one fight anyway."

In-gong looked at Caitlin after Chris's question. She looked like a shy 15 year old girl rather than a commander. However, she wasn't just cute.

"I understand, I will do as Noona said. Thank you for your consideration."

After In-gong finished talking, Caitlin didn't show any obvious expression but her eyes were half smiling. Even the corners of her mouth went up slightly.

"Tsutsu, I'm sorry I was so honest towards you."

Caitlin ignored Chris' laughs and pointed to the map of the battlefield.

"Since it is like this, I will now explain the details."

Chris and Caitlin explained what would happen in the battle tomorrow. In-gong's expression was a little complicated after hearing the two of them speak.

Assuming that they went against Zephyr, Chris and Caitlin could be good companions. However, it was difficult to say that they would be unconditionally good companions.

Chris and Caitlin died a year before the Day of Massacre, due to a surprise attack led by Zephyr along with other children of the Demon King.

The reason was simple as to why the children of the Demon King, who were busy fighting each other, united to remove both of them.

The 8th princess, Caitlin Moonlight.

She wasn't the child of the Demon King.

Author's Note:

There are many species in the Demon World.

All five of the Demon King's queens are different species, so the princes and princess would have different species characteristics.

The species of the different princes and princesses will soon be explained.

# Chapter 7

## Entry #6

He had lunch with Chris and Caitlin and it was really superb compared to Shutra's breakfast. It seemed like they had brought their own chefs to the battlefield.

After the things were finished, In-gong returned to his base with Carack.

'Wasn't it Zephyr who uncovered it in the game?'

The secret of Caitlin's birth.

She was the illegitimate child of the 4th queen, Elaine Moonlight, and Gallehed, one of the five captains of the Demon King's Palace.

Zephyr was an orthodox member and didn't let this fact go. He incited his other siblings to unite together and raised troops to get rid of Caitlin, Chris and Queen Elaine all at once.

Caitlin, Chris and the 4th Queen Elaine resisted and as a result, both sides received heavy casualties.

Chris, Caitlin and the 4th Queen Elaine died. The lycanthropes became virtually extinct.

The forces of the other siblings who competed with Zephyr were weakened.

Zephyr, who stirred up the conflict, watched with his hands behind his back and received mild damage.

'After that battle, his power was firmly established.'

In other words, it would be good for In-gong if the Caitlin purge event didn't happen.

'Or I can use it.'

In-gong frowned at his merciless thoughts. He had talked to Chris and Caitlin for a while and ate their rice. To be honest, he was more overwhelmed by Caitlin than Chris. Her face flicked before him.

‘Ah, I don’t know. It is still far away. Let’s solve this situation first.’

It was still far away. It would happen in a few years, so he could think about it later.

‘Whether I decide to use them or not, I need to raise my own power.’

The same conclusion from this morning emerged. He could only start doing things once he raised his strength.

"Carack, please prepare a team for scouting. It will be enough if we eat and leave tomorrow morning right?"

"That is great."

Carack nodded with a bright face. He was quite satisfied with the meal received at Caitlin’s base.

'Indeed, I acquired the Gourmet skill.'

Gourmet Lv1. It wasn’t helpful in combat, so he wouldn’t actively raise the skill level.

‘What is good? Isn’t it just developing the mouth? Then is it bad?’

They were futile worries. In-gong cleared his thoughts and once again said to Carack, "Then I will take a break. Later on, let me fill my stomach with some cows for dinner."

"Understood."

In-gong left Carack and entered the tent. Now that he was alone, a sigh emerged without him knowing it.

He had truly entered the game or he had arrived at a different world that was just like the game.



There was no explanation about why this happened. In-gong wondered why he had a game-like ability.

His job was a Protagonist while his uniqueness was a Conquest Knight.

In-gong had these questions but decided to set them aside for the moment.

‘I will train with the sword.’

From the time being, the most important thing was improving Shutra. He had to do that while gathering subordinates and investigating.

In-gong took out the wooden sword.

And the next morning, In-gong reached level 5.

"Will you be okay today?"

Carack asked after eating breakfast and leaving the garrison. He was smiling but his eyes looked worried.

"Yes, I will be fine."

He was a crude, oversized orc but In-gong had become accustomed to it. Carack shrugged at In-gong's answer.

"Hmmm, it seems like someone has changed overnight, although it is a good thing."

Carack had only known Shutra for two days. Instead of responding, In-gong looked over the soldiers.

There was a total of 31 troops under In-gong, including Carack. They were all orcs.

They were local troops, led by Carack, that were assigned to In-gong.

‘Anyway, I want to continue training.’

In fact, In-gong spend all of last night levelling up.

He had suddenly appeared in another world, so he couldn't sleep. However, he found it enjoyable swinging the sword and didn't look at the time.

The result was visible. Moreover, he grew faster because he was low levelled.

He couldn't help feeling happy. It was like studying and seeing his rank rise significantly in a national high school.

'Ah, I want a sword. I want to level up.'

Fortunately, he had levelled up this morning, so he was in the best condition. He was able to swing the sword all night despite Shutra's low stamina because his stamina was restored when he levelled up.

'Huhuhu, my name is Joo In-gong. I am 1.3 times stronger than Villager A.'

In-gong currently had an average of 13 stat points. He was stronger than an ordinary Villager A.

He intentionally left his additional points and skill points alone. It would be more difficult to level up at higher levels, so he didn't want to waste the additional points just yet.

'I will save it for later.'

The same was true for his skill points. He could learn many skills if he concentrated.

'How do I learn magic or psychic abilities? Do I need a separate teacher?'

As he went through his troubles in his head, he arrived at the area that he was supposed to scout.

The scouting area Caitlin assigned him was originally where the Red Lightning tribe used to live. It was an area that the Red Lightning tribe abandoned due to strategic reasons.

It couldn't just be left alone.

'Yes, I can't come all the way here just to write a report on scouting.'

Caitlin said there wouldn't be a big threat but he wasn't completely reassured. In-gong put aside his desire to level up and searched the surroundings vigilantly. While confirming the map given to Carack, he zoomed in on the mini-map as much as possible to ensure accuracy.

After approximately 20 minutes.

"Um."

In-gong suddenly stopped. Carack quickly stopped the soldiers and asked In-gong,

"What is it? Is it too hard? Are your legs sore?"

He seemed to be seen as quite a big weakling. In-gong pointed to the map he was looking at and asked.

"This is the correct map right?"

"Is there something wrong?"

"Rather than something being wrong..."

There was another part. The map showed a straight path while the mini-map showed a small side path.

Why did it matter?

'What is it? A hidden path!'

It wasn't on the map. In other words, the people who made the map didn't know about it.

Yet, it was on the mini-map. In other words, a route obviously existed.

Then it had to be a hidden path!

'If this is a game, then it will be an event.'

At the end of the hidden path, there was always a monster, event or treasure. Moreover, this was a reconnaissance mission so finding anything was good.

'An enemy might emerge but...there is Carack!'

He had Carack and the 30 orc warriors that were at least 10 times stronger than Villager A. He didn't think there would be a big problem unless the enemy had superior numbers.

"Carack, I will lead from now on."

Carack narrowed his eyes, then he burst out laughing.

"Your eyes are burning. Ambition is roaring."

In-gong guided the orcs. The path was changed suddenly but because of Carack, the orcs followed In-gong's instructions without saying anything.

The side path was really hidden. After walking through bushes for a while and passing an area covered in rocks from a landslide, there was a small path covered by trees.

As In-gong had expected, the path didn't just end up as a path. At the end was an old stone door. There were letters engraved on the surface but they were difficult to recognize because they were covered in moss.

"Wah, how did you find this? Is Prince a magician?"

In-gong grinned at Carack's admiration.

"I just did."

He wasn't a magician yet. Although, maybe, he would soon become one.

In-gong shrugged and ordered Carack and the orcs to clean up the stones around the door.

The stone door was big enough for Carack to walk through but it didn't budge when they tried to open it. It seemed like they had to break the stone door to get inside.

"Prince, what do you want to do? Should I break in?"

Carack asked In-gong. In-gong stared at the stone door for a while instead of answering.

'It is like the protagonist getting a broken leg instead of dying after falling off a cliff.'

The main character lived while others died. This was a chance to obtain money or something like an elixir.

In-gong stared at 'Protagonist Correction Lv1' and nodded. He ordered Carack,

"Smash."

Carack lifted his hammer.

# Chapter 8

## Entry #7

The stone door was large and solid but in the end, it was a stone tablet designed for opening and closing. Carack used his muscles and smashed it with the hammer.

It was obvious but the inside of the cave was dark. On top of that, it looked quite deep.

"The dwarves seem to have made this cave."

Carack said with squinted eyes. In-gong had some questions.

"Dwarves? Are there dwarves in the Demon World?"

Just like how orcs were universally present in fantasy, Knight Saga also had dwarves.

They were a small species with thick shoulders and beards. Of course, they also had good strength, stamina and dexterity.

He'd been able to meet quite a number of dwarves when playing the human Locke. Right now, there was a dwarf among Locke's companions.

However, it was different when playing Zephyr. Dwarves didn't officially live in the Demon World.

Carack was dumbfounded by In-gong's question. It seemed like he was surprised by something other than the question.

"Why?"

"No, you don't remember your name but you know about dwarves."

In-gong glared at him and Carack laughed awkwardly.

"I heard that they used to live here a long time ago. The Jishuka Mountains are slightly

close to the Human World.”

“Did they move as a group?”

“That's what I heard. Well, it was a few hundred years ago, so no one knows why.”

It made sense. In-gong nodded and Carack continued.

“Well, I think this is a dwarf cave. After seeing the pieces on the door, does Prince think that it is impossible? Would orcs be able to punch through this cave?”

This place was the southern Jishuka Mountains. The cave required a large civil engineering work, not a simple labour force. The right skills were needed.

“Okay, let's go.”

Looking at the state of the door, it seemed like the Red Lightning orcs were unaware of its existence. It meant they were unlikely to meet orcs inside.

‘If this is a dwarf cave, there should be dwarf weapons, right?’

Dwarf weapons were naturally expensive. They were expensive due to their good performance. In-gong had used many dwarf weapons when playing Knight Saga.

All of Knight Saga's items were divided into five grades: common, uncommon, rare, unique and legend. It was roughly thought that every time the grade increased, the price would go higher by at least 10 times.

‘Yes, they also play a role in winning a war!’

If he was armed with a dwarf weapon, then even the weak Shutra could kill a person.

‘It would be better if higher grade weapons come out!’

In-gong felt his chest swell with wild dreams.

How long did they move?

‘Pant pant, over here.’

He found a hidden room due to the mini-map. It was a room that was like an arsenal.

However, there was one crucial problem.

[Your level is not high enough.]

[Your strength is not high enough.]

[Your magic power is not high enough.]

He kept on hearing similar messages when holding a weapon in his hand.

They were too heavy for Shutra's thin arms. Some weapons also required a lot of magic power that Shutra didn't have.

Of course, it was possible to swing them. However, it would be impossible to show the weapons' true performance. A weapon that couldn't be properly used would cause more harm than good.

In-gong's fantastic dreams faded away. It was an inevitable result when he thought about it.

Would a red hare be able to defeat a white tiger? Nobody could draw Excalibur until King Arthur pulled it out. In order to use a good weapon, one had to be a good person.

'Although I can try one thing.'

In-gong picked up a dwarf weapon and placed it into his inventory. If he held it and thought 'bag,' then it would enter his inventory.

In-gong placed all the weapons into his inventory one by one. Carack stared at him from behind with wide eyes.

"P-Prince?"

In-gong grinned. It was natural to be surprised.

A weapon disappeared once In-gong held it. However, In-gong wasn't shocked and just repeated the work silently.



"Takes the spoils. Later, it would be good if Carack... no. Carack, pick one right now and I will give weapons to the ones who show some merit."

If an enemy appeared, Carack would be the one taking the lead in a fight. Naturally, Carack needed a good weapon.

Of course, it wasn't the same for the other orcs fighting.

"Then should I swallow it quickly?"

It was normal for the protagonist to get more of the loot. However, In-gong was currently a prince. It didn't matter if Shutra's status was slightly different from Chris and Caitlin.

Carack's eyes shone as he picked a weapon, then went back to gawking at In-gong who was making the weapons disappear.

"Prince, are you really a magician?"

"A prince should know a few magic spells."

He was a prince of the Demon World, not a magician. He needed to make Shutra grow.

Anyway, In-gong continued to fill his inventory and managed to sweep up all the dwarf equipment in the arsenal.

"This is just the equipment."

He hung a dagger that Shutra, who was slightly stronger than Villager A, could use on the belt at his waist and wore a shirt made of thin chains. He tried to wear a helmet but he quickly gave up since it was too heavy.

"Prince, should we keep going?"

Carack, who was holding a big axe, asked with a face half filled with joy and anxiety. The passage was really crowded due to the 31 big orcs. No, it felt really difficult to breathe. In-gong looked at the passage that was four to five metres wide and nodded.

"From the start, our mission was reconnaissance. Let's keep moving forward."

Weapons and treasures could pop up again.

In-gong activated the mini-map and took the lead with Carack.

After approximately an hour, as they walked through the long passage, there were a few more empty rooms but no treasures or weapons.

In-gong scratched his chin and stared at the mini-map that seemed to go on forever.

'Isn't this cave too long? Aren't we just going through the mountain?'

It didn't matter if they were penetrating through the mountain. The important thing was the location of the exit. If it was the wrong place, they might end up in the area of the Red Lightning tribe.

'Would that be bad?'

If they had the element of surprise, it might turn out well.

Of course, In-gong didn't intend for the 31 orcs to jump in the middle of the enemy. He was just going to check where the exit led to.

'By the way, I want to learn magic.'

Learning a skill didn't seem that difficult after his experience with the Swordsmanship and Map Reading skills. The problem was who would teach him.

'I should get a magician.'

He was a prince of the Demon World but no one around him knew how to use magic.

'Can Chris and Caitlin use spells? They probably have many people who can use magic around them. Should I ask Caitlin to teach me?'

If he asked Zephyr to teach him magic, Zephyr would probably stab him with the sword. However, Chris and Caitlin were different. It was highly likely they would teach him.

'I would prefer Caitlin instead of Chris.'

If they had the same value, he would prefer the one in the skirt.

In-gong was visualizing Caitlin's pretty face when he saw something. There was still darkness in front of him that the torch couldn't reach but the mini-map showed a stone door lying beyond that darkness.

"The exit."

Once In-gong spoke, Carack stopped in place and raised his hand. The trained orcs stopped in place.

Just like the entrance, the exit was likely to be sealed. Should they break the exit and check the situation, or return?

In-gong folded his arms and thought for a while.

It was at that moment.

A loud sound was heard in the darkness. Light came leaking from the exit.

"Hurry! That mad witch is following us!"

"Calm down, Kaichin! I know of this passage despite never seeing it before. That witch won't be able to come after us."

The voices of orcs could be heard and In-gong and Carack stared at each other. There was a sound and the stone door collapsed. Their eyes had been accustomed to darkness when the light poured in.

In-gong frowned. Many things were rushing through his head.

Orcs had appeared at the exit.

Kaichin, a high ranking member of the Red Lightning tribe.

Beyond the mountains...

A crazy witch was chasing them.

‘Caitlin!’

As In-gong expected, the cave was connected to the rear of the Red Lightning tribe and today, Chris and Caitlin were attacking their camp.

In other words, Kaichin and the orcs were soldiers who ran away from the battlefield!

The orcs on both sides were surprised. Carack hesitated before he lifted his axe and his orcs also raised their weapons.

In-gong turned his attention towards the mini-map. The mini-map showed the number of enemies.

"Prince! Retreat!"

Carack shouted. In-gong heard it as something dug into his chest.

“Cough!”

"Prince!"

An orc aimed a wolfbone staff and cast something in In-gong’s direction. In-gong collapsed to the ground while Carack started attacking with a vengeance. The orcs followed him.

"Kuheok, keok!"

In-gong staggered while falling to the ground. He was in too much pain. It was fortunate he was wearing the chainmail shirt.

‘Magic?! No, psychic powers?’

There wasn’t a chant but there was a possibility it was a psychic ability.

However, now wasn’t the time to be thinking about something like this. He heard screaming and shouting as the fighting started.

‘Get up. I have to get up!’

In-gong got up. He zoomed in on the mini-map to check on the situation.

However, In-gong couldn’t concentrate. The clear voice of a woman rang in his head.

[Telekinesis Lv1 has been learnt.]

“Huh?”

Telekinesis.

In-gong looked down at his chest.

# Chapter 9

## Entry #8

‘Telekinesis? Is it really Telekinesis? No, did I really learn it?’

Knight Saga had several powers.

There were those who, like warriors, acquired aura power to fight directly with their bodies.

Magicians used the power of nature to cast magic.

Unlike theoretical magic, mental power and psychic power were close to instinctual.

The gods gave divine powers to their believers.

People were born with the powers but it was rare for someone to have psychic powers.

‘Did I wake up a psychic power? Then can I wake up another power like aura? If I have divine power, can I awaken it?’

If it was as he thought, then it was truly a scam. Even Zephyr and Locke couldn’t master all four powers.

In-gong impulsively opened his skill window. Then he thought again because he didn’t want to distribute his skill points too impulsively.

‘No, I have to. Right now, it will be a big help if I put points into Telekinesis. I must live!’

He was currently in battle. This wasn’t the time to save his points. He needed to leave here alive to learn other powers.

In-gong cleared his thoughts and looked up. The exit was much larger than the passage because it was located in a vacant lot. However, the dozens of big orcs made it seem narrow.

"Kuaaaak!"

"Kuhang!"

Among them, Carack and Kaichin were facing each other. The other orcs wielded their weapons and were busy dealing with the enemies in front of them.

The orc that held a wolfbone staff and had hit In-gong with a psychic attack was fighting other orcs.

'We are being pushed.'

The mini-map showed that each side had similar numbers.

However, a fight wasn't just about numbers. In-gong nervously swallowed his saliva and stared at Carack. He was having a tough confrontation with Kaichin, a member the Red Lightning tribe.

'Well done! As expected of Carack! It was worth giving that weapon to him!'

"Cough!"

"Keok!"

Carack's orcs and the Red Lightning orcs screamed as they were killed. In-gong felt a sense of horror as he brandished his knife at a passerby and blood gushed out.

"Pant pant."

In-gong started breathing heavily. Due to the telekinesis strike, In-gong was now on the edge of the battle.

'What should I do? Shouldn't I strike if I want some experience?'

It was unreasonable for In-gong to confront an orc. Although he was 1.3 times stronger than Villager A, an orc was many times stronger. Moreover, he had just learnt swordsmanship, so a 1:1 melee confrontation was too much.

However, he couldn't just watch. He was able to gain experience just by wielding a wooden sword. Therefore, taking part in an actual battle could make his level rise in a flash.

'I need to hold them off. How can I hold them off?'

He couldn't just lunge in and hit everything.

'Something else, something different.'

It had to be helpful. It wasn't in his nature to run away or hide from a fight.

'Should I increase the level of Telekinesis?'

If he invested all his skill points, he could increase Telekinesis to level three. However, it was hard to know how much each level would cost.

'A lot of points are required for a skill like Telekinesis. It might require more points after reaching level two.'

He would be really upset if he didn't have enough to reach level three.

'I can't just throw them all away on Telekinesis.'

There was also Basic Swordsmanship. If Basic Swordsmanship reached level four, it seemed possible.

In-gong opened his skills window. However, unlike his original idea, he didn't touch Basic Swordsmanship.

It was because he noticed something once again.

[Conquest Lv -]

An inactive skill.

Conquest Knight was listed in the uniqueness section.



He had never seen a Conquest Knight in Knight Saga before. What was a Conquest Knight? Furthermore, there was also a skill.

‘Conquest.’

His heart started throbbing. He had never felt this before. It felt like something was surging in his chest.

‘Punishment, obedience...governance.’

These words popped into his head. At that moment, everything before him became dark and in the darkness, he saw a woman dressed in white. A woman with one red eye, one blue eye, long white hair and the adornment of a golden crown stared at In-gong.

"Do something! Hit him!"

The orc holding a wolfbone staff shouted loudly and pointed at In-gong. All the orcs, regardless if they were friend or foe, stared at In-gong with surprise. A pure white light was surrounding In-gong.

“Stop!”

"Hit him!"

"Watch the prince!"

Carack was the last voice. Kaichin woke up from his amazement and aimed the hammer at Carack.

"Prince?"

This was the first time the prince didn't listen when he was called. Carack avoided the hammer desperately and Kaichin then started running toward In-gong.

"Die! We must kill him!"

The son of the Demon King.

A prince.

Shutra wasn't weak but Chris and Caitlin were incredibly strong. To Kaichin, who'd dealt with both of them, Shutra seemed like a terrible monster.

Carack chased after Kaichin. The orcs with opposing purposes flocked toward each other; one side to protect In-gong and the other to kill him.

In-gong didn't notice any of the fuss. He was alone in a new world where only the woman in white could be seen.

She said something but he couldn't hear her voice. Darkness enveloped the woman and the darkness covering In-gong's eyes soon faded away.

"Prince!"

"Heok?"

Carack shouted and In-gong jumped back. Kaichin's battle hammer struck the place where In-gong had just been standing.

"Ohhhh!"

Carack struck Kaichin. A struggle between the two orcs occurred in front of In-gong.

In-gong quickly grabbed the dwarf dagger. Instead of leaping forward recklessly, his instincts made him open the skill window.

[Secondary Occupation: Conquest Knight Lv1]

It was a new occupation. Additionally, it wasn't just the occupation that was added.

'The power of conquest is a king's strength!'

In-gong understood it naturally. The skill Conquest had been activated.

"Below the King's Flag!"

In-gong stabbed the dagger into the ground. At that moment, a white light scattered around the area. A white line also formed between In-gong and Carack.

It was only for a moment.

But it was enough. In-gong invoked the power of a king and Carack embraced that power as the king's subordinate.

'Kuoooooh!'

Carack swung his axe. It was a faster and more powerful blow than before.

"Keok?"

Kaichin moaned with confusion as he was pushed back by Carack. Then Carack aimed his axe at Kaichin's head. It was a continuous strike that normally wouldn't have been possible.

The dwarf battle axe smashed through Kaichin's head at once. As brains and blood splattered everywhere, a sensation was shared between In-gong and Carack.

[Your level has risen.]  
[Your level has risen.]

Carack achieved some merits for his king.

In-gong stared at Carack after gaining two levels. Yet, the line between In-gong and Carack was still the same.

"Go! Carack!"

After hearing In-gong's command, Carack took a deep breath and pulled his axe from where it was stuck in Kaichin's head. Shaking his axe, he let out a battle cry.

"Fight, fight! That is the only way to live!"

The orc shaman, the orc with the wolfbone staff, shouted urgently. However, it was useless. The Red Lightning orcs standing near the exit were trembling as they felt like

fleeing.

“Kuooh!”

Carack rushed through the orcs and swung his axe in every direction. The momentum was so intense that no orc could endure Carack’s strikes.

“Run away!”

Once one of the orcs cried out, the balance collapsed completely.

The Red Lightning orcs fled toward the exit. Meanwhile, Carack rushed toward the orc shaman who cursed and brandished his staff.

Kakang!

There was a clanging sound as the axe and staff hit each other. However, they didn’t bounce off each other. Carack’s axe split through the staff and dug into the orc shaman’s chest.

“Kuhak!”

The orc shaman gave a pained groan. However, his eyes were still alive. He pushed intensely at Carack with Telekinesis.

It was his final, desperate struggle.

The orc shaman was determined to die. In-gong reached for his dagger.

‘Just one more!’

The orc shaman’s next attack didn’t happen. A new blade had pierced the side of the orc shaman.

“Cough!”

The orc shaman felt some excruciating pain while using Telekinesis. The orc shaman stared at In-gong who was stabbing him with poisonous eyes. The dwarf dagger was firmly embedded in him.

'I have to kill him!'

In-gong didn't say it out loud but it was enough. The orc shaman fell down with a final cry and In-gong took a few steps back.

"Hah, ha..."

The line connected to Carack disappeared. Despite having just levelled up, his body felt heavy like he had exhausted all his stamina.

"Prince."

Carack called out to In-gong, who then turned and looked at him. Carack seemed like a brutal beast due to the blood covering him but Carack just laughed and raised his axe.

"We won! I took Kaichin's head. Prince's victory!"

"Ohhh!"

"Ohhhhh!"

Carack's orc subordinates cheered with pleasure at the victory.

Instead of cheering with them, In-gong sat down and breathed in deeply. Now that the battle was over, he didn't have much spirit remaining.

Over the orcs cheers, a voice was heard in In-gong's head.

[Your level has risen.]

Level eight.

In-gong laughed with delight.

End of Chapter 1

Author's Note:

Some of you may have noticed but one of the core materials of Breakers is the 'Four Knights of the Apocalypse.'

Joo In-gong is a Conquest Knight.

-I know that some subcultures use Pestilence but I decided on Conquest.

# Chapter 10

## Alliance

There were many species in the Demon World.

There were the draconians who inherited the essence of the great dragon species, the succubi and incubi, the vampires who lusted after blood and souls, the sura who could be called the strongest combat species and the fallen fairies that were called dark elves.

There would be no end if they were listed one by one.

Even though there were as many species as grains of sand, some of them had specifically demonstrated their strength.

The lycanthropes were a tough species. They were born with strong vitality and showed remarkable ability to resist time. Additionally, those with the blood of the wild were ruthless, persistent and excellent hunters.

The lycanthropes were breathing harshly.

Their appearances varied and they could pass off as wolves, tigers, and so on.

They weren't breathing hard because they were exhausted. It was to control the wild blood that had awakened.

The smell of the Red Lightning tribe's blood stimulated the lycanthropes. Some lost control and bit the bodies of the orcs.

Among the lycanthropes, there was one who was different.

It was a female with dark blue hair tied up and bloodied black leather armour.

Caitlin Moonlight.

The eighth princess and lycanthrope was controlling her breathing with closed eyes.

As a half lycanthrope and half sura, she was unlike the other lycanthropes. However, none of the lycanthropes dared to ignore her.

After breathing for a long time, Caitlin finally opened her eyes. She sniffed as she looked around and frowned.

'I missed him.'

She succeeded in smashing Kaichin's army but she missed killing Kaichin and Kaidum.

'It can't be helped.'

It was a melee and they were cowards who didn't fight properly.

'Yes, it can't be helped.'

She tried to convince herself but it didn't work. In the end, Caitlin kicked furiously at the ground.

"Princess."

Caitlin turned around as someone called out to her.

"Seira."

Caitlin's direct subordinate, the lycanthrope Seira, bowed. As a leopard lycanthrope, her golden hair was dyed red with the blood of enemies. Regardless, she was a stable subordinate.

"Are you hurt anywhere?"

Caitlin asked with a gentle smile.

"I'm fine, thank you for worrying. I have an urgent matter to report."

"Huh? Report?"



The battle was already over, so Caitlin didn't know what needed to be reported. Seira took one step closer to Caitlin.

"Kaichin is dead. Kaidum, who was with him, also died."

It was good news but Caitlin used raised an eyebrow instead of feeling jubilant.

"Who caught him?"

They had run away just after the battle started. Were there soldiers tracking them after they left the battlefield?

In response to Caitlin's question, Seira coughed with an uncomfortable expression and replied,

"Prince Shutra."

"Huh?"

Caitlin let out a sound reflexively. Shutra's name had suddenly come out.

Seira understood Caitlin's heart, so she continued with an awkward smile.

"Prince Shutra caught Kaichin and Kaidum. He personally took down Kaidum."

Caitlin just stared blankly instead of replying. Seira understood her master's confusion.

'I thought the same.'

However, it was true.

The Ninth Prince Shutra Ignus.

The weakest prince had caught Kaichin and Kaidum and he achieved the best merits in today's battle.

He received rewards for catching the enemy.

He had gained three levels and learnt the new skill, Telekinesis.

It was obviously a good thing. However, In-gong couldn't be comforted easily.

'What is it?'

That white woman he saw during the battle.

She wore white clothes and had a golden crown on her head. One of her eyes was red and the other blue. The woman had been unrealistically beautiful.

'No, rather than being beautiful...she felt different?'

Anyway, it was clear that she wasn't an ordinary person.

But who was she? She was someone who hadn't appear in Knight Saga.

'Is she an important person who normally appears in moments of crisis?'

Maybe she was the one who had brought In-gong into this world.

'Punishment, obedience, governance.'

The words he'd heard from the woman surfaced in his head again.

In-gong activated both the status window and skills window. Both of them surfaced in front of him.

[Secondary Occupation: Conquest Knight Lv1]  
[Conquer Lv1]  
[Below the King's Flag Lv1]

The deactivated skill Conquest became Lv1 but like Protagonist Correction, he wasn't able to raise the level with skill points.

'Conquest. Conquest Knight.'

It was a skill and occupation that hadn't existed in Knight Saga.

'Below the King's Flag is a buff skill... The power of conquest is the power of a king? Is that why the white woman is wearing a crown?'

In-gong worried about it for a while before sighing, then concluded it neatly.

'Ah, I don't know. If she is really important, I'll see her again later.'

He wouldn't get any answers, so there was no point struggling alone. The information he had was too lacking in the first place.

'If I go to the library, there might be stories related to this.'

The library in the Demon King's Palace was managed by an elder lich. It contained a lot of information, so there might be something related to a Conquest Knight there.

'In order to take advantage of that, I need to be strong.'

It was a ridiculous rule in the Demon King's Palace and the Demon World.

Those who didn't reach a certain level of strength couldn't use some facilities in the palace and in the towns. A few more levels were required to use the magic laboratories or the blacksmiths.

The library needed a very high level. Even Zephyr hadn't been able to use the library in the early parts of the game.

'It is good for now.'

He was already level eight. It wasn't even half of Carack's level but it was significant since he had just barely stepped into this world.

'Come to think of it.'

In-gong had killed an orc with his own hands. However, he didn't feel any surge of emotions.

'Uh, shouldn't I have a trauma by now?'

Was In-gong a psychopath? No, there was no way. Anyway, it was in a battle and if he didn't kill the orc, his allies would have died.

'And it was an orc.'

He felt sorry towards Carack but he couldn't think of orcs as people yet. Their appearance was too different.

"Prince."

"Huh?"

In-gong raised his head after hearing Carack's call. Carack looked at In-gong like he was crazy and pointed down the hill.

"Someone is coming."

"What?"

He asked but there was no reply. In-gong checked to see who was coming from the bottom of the hill.

'Caitlin?'

He didn't have time to observe more closely. Caitlin quickly climbed the hill and moved next to In-gong.

"Are you okay? Are you injured anywhere?"

Caitlin asked while looking at In-gong's bloody clothes. Her voice was full of worry.

"You... No, is Noona okay?"

In-gong was more concerned about Caitlin. In-gong only had a little bit of blood on his clothes but Caitlin seemed like she had bathed in blood. Her blue hair was dyed dark from the blood.

Caitlin shrugged at In-gong's question and said,

“It isn’t my blood.”

‘Wah, I never thought I would actually hear that line.’

Caitlin took one step closer to In-gong while he was admiring her. She stared straight at In-gong and asked,

"What happened?"

“I will explain what happened.”

In-gong summarised his experiences, making it as short as possible. During the reconnaissance, he had found a small path and an entrance to a cave. As he moved along the cave, he had arrived at the exit and encountered Kaichin’s party.

‘I will leave out the part about finding dwarf weapons.’

In-gong glanced nervously at his inventory button before looking back at Caitlin.

‘How will she respond?’

Caitlin had been the confident one in yesterday’s meeting. Maybe she had been kind to him because Shutra was too weak to be a threat.

However, now, Shutra, In-gong, had gotten the highest merit. He had also taken down one of the enemies with his own hands.

How would Caitlin respond?

Would she be wary? Would she treat him unkindly like Zephyr?

“Amazing.”

“Huh?”

“It is really amazing. You have made yourself distinguished!”

It wasn’t what he’d expected. Caitlin laughed brightly. Her face was so pretty that it was the first time In-gong understood the phrase, ‘flower bud blooming’. He

completely forgot that Caitlin was bloody.

Caitlin was different from yesterday. It was like she was truly delighted that her little brother had gotten some merits.

‘Kuk, I should be purified.’

In-gong felt bad for thinking dark thoughts.

‘Zephyr aimed for someone like this? Indeed, Zephyr.’

It was Zephyr who removed all threats by killing his siblings. It would be harder to be friendly to someone like that.

Anyway, In-gong had a question answered when he saw Caitlin laughing. She was similar but different from the white woman. They were both pretty, but Caitlin seemed like a person while the white woman hadn’t.

"You are much stronger than I thought. Cool, you’re trustworthy."

Caitlin patted In-gong’s shoulder. At that light touch, In-gong had another thought.

‘Didn’t I awaken Telekinesis after being hit by it?’

Unfortunately, In-gong didn’t have any priests who knew how to use divine power. Neither did he have magicians who knew mana or aura users around.

However, now, Caitlin was in front of him.

"Noona, I have a request."

"Huh? A request? What is it?"

She grinned like she was pleased to receive the request. In-gong said as naturally as possible.

"Please hit me with a little bit of your aura."

It didn’t take long for Caitlin’s expression to change.

Author's Note:

The Four Knights of the Apocalypse.

White Knight of Conquest / Red Knight of War / Blue Knight of Death / Black Knight of Famine

# Chapter 11

## Alliance #2

"My little brother is a pervert! My little brother is a pervert!"

Caitlin shouted toward Chris from the middle of the tent. It was loud enough to be heard from outside the tent as In-gong waved his hands frantically.

"I-is that possible?"

He had certainly made a mistake. He asked her to hit him with her aura; it was certainly a strange request.

However, a pervert? Shurta was a young man who was only 14 years old. Moreover, In-gong didn't enjoy those types of hobbies.

"I thought you were respectful but..."

In-gong didn't know why and Chris just clicked his tongue, seeming to enjoy teasing In-gong. Caitlin alternated between looking at Chris and In-gong and muttered,

"Pervert..."

Her eyes were looking at her younger brother but they had changed a little bit. The misunderstanding seemed to have deepened during the time they washed up. In-gong groaned and opened his eyes wide.

"I told you the reason why!"

Of course, he hadn't explain everything but they didn't seem to believe in his innocence. Although Chris and Caitlin had heard quite a bit of the story, the two of them were still teasing him like this.

He had always been interested in Aura. So, he explained to Chris and Caitlin that he just wanted to feel the aura directly with his body.



Chris wiped the teasing smirk from his face. He placed his arm around In-gong and said seriously,

"Hmm, although it doesn't seem like an impossible story... I've never heard of someone awakening Aura like that."

Aura was life force.

Therefore, all creatures living on the Assenba Continent had the possibility of having a small or large aura.

The most common way to awaken an aura was through training.

If they repeated an action a thousand times a day, there might be an 'oh!' moment. This was indeed the most universal and reasonable way to awaken it.

Of course, there were individual differences between species.

The lycanthropes were overflowing with vitality, so they were capable of awakening it easily. On the other hand, the orcs were a tough warrior species but the odds of them awakening an aura was low.

Caitlin and Chris had both awakened an aura despite being in the mid-teens. It was an amazing feat despite it being the racial characteristic of lycanthropes.

They were talented but had to work very hard to achieve it. Shutra hadn't seen an aura before, so it wasn't unusual that he wanted to feel it.

Caitlin and Chris thought about it with a serious expression before asking In-gong.

"Is it possibly because you are a gandharva?"

Gandharva. Shutra's mother and the 5th queen was from the Ignus tribe.

Gandharva had a great talent for 'sensing' things. It didn't matter if it was the wind or a power flowing in the atmosphere.

Chris thought it was a good story and stared at In-gong with curious eyes. In-gong

laughed awkwardly and said.

"Uh...well, that might be the case. I just want to feel it for a little bit."

"You want to feel..."

Chris' eyes became a little bit mischievous. He squeezed In-gong's tired shoulders while Caitlin kept an eye on Chris. Chris chuckled at the expressions on his younger siblings' faces.

"Okay, let me do it. I'll be polite."

He raised a big fist filled with aura. It seemed like In-gong would die if he was hit by it.

"Ah, no! I would prefer Noona rather than Hyung..."

In-gong frantically looked at Caitlin. Chris also glanced at Caitlin with joy filled eyes and she sighed.

"I understand. I will try it."

Caitlin stood in front of In-gong and swept a glance over his body. It seemed like she was worrying about where to hit.

"Uh, how about your shoulder or your arm?"

In-gong turned and showed her his shoulder. Despite levelling up, he still felt like it would be a hard and painful blow.

Caitlin nodded with a grim expression and lifted her right hand. Unlike Chris, the blue aura around Caitlin's hand felt cold.

"Should I do it now?"

"Yes."

In-gong was tense but Caitlin was even more nervous. Rather than hitting In-gong, Caitlin touched his shoulder gently.

“Is that it?”

There was nothing. Nevertheless, it wasn’t a simple contact.

In-gong laughed to reassure Caitlin and said,

“No, a little bit harder.”

"This much?"

Caitlin hit In-gong’s shoulder with the palm of her hand. He sensed something but it was subtle.

"A little bit more!"

At In-gong’s shout, Caitlin turned toward Chris with a restless expression. In-gong didn’t know why but he enjoyed it a little bit. It was because Caitlin’s restless face was so cute.

‘No, now isn’t the time for something like this. Regain your spirit, your spirit.’

In-gong shook his head and urged Caitlin.

"Properly!"

Chris nodded toward Caitlin’s unspoken question. She closed her eyes and struck In-gong’s arm.

“Keok!”

In-gong cried out and fell to the ground. He was hit in the arm but his whole body was sore.

“Shutra?”

“Hey! Are you okay?”

Caitlin and Chris approached with surprise. He had screamed so loudly it could be

heard outside the tent.

In-gong endured the pain and nodded. He was literally in tears but there was an achievement.

[You have learnt Aura Lv1]

"Huhut."

Aura Lv1. However, he felt sick as the new power spread deep inside his body.

"Hey! Hey! Are you really okay?"

Chris' voice seemed somewhat distant. Why was he losing consciousness from being hit in the arm? Was it due to awakening the aura?

"Shutra!"

In-gong smiled with satisfaction as Caitlin's cries faded away. He had fainted.

In-gong was in the dark.

His eyes weren't open, so it wasn't strange that his vision was dark.

There were people gathered in this space. He was able to see them easily despite the darkness around him.

He saw a woman with white hair wearing a golden crown. It was the woman dressed in white that he had seen before.

The woman wasn't alone. It was blurry but there were three more people with her.

There was a woman with reddish blonde hair and a fire-like, red aura around her body.

There was a skinny man dressed in black clothes that made him almost indistinguishable from the surrounding darkness.

The last man was wearing a blue cloak and a skull-shaped helmet.

In-gong wanted to look at the three people more closely. However, he couldn't reach them.

The white woman turned in his direction. Her red and blue eyes stared at In-gong and he woke up.

"Are you okay?"

"Hiiik!"

In-gong stared straight into the face of an orc when he woke up. He tried to move his body away as much as possible.

"Pant, pant...what a surprise."

It was shocking to suddenly go from looking at a beauty to an orc.

The orc who he saw was Carack. Carack stared at In-gong and sighed with relief.

"Did you have a bad dream?"

"Uh, that is..."

In-gong made a confused sound. He obviously had a dream but couldn't remember the contents. They were all just blurry images.

"Well, it was just a dream. By the way, why did you ask the princess to hit you? The princess has been restless."

In-gong checked the time before answering. It had only been approximately five hours, so a day hadn't passed yet. He knew it was dark without needing to go outside.

'Was she really worried?'

He recalled Caitlin's face from just before he fainted. Her face was cute when she was confused.

"Prince?"

"Ah, no. It is nothing."

Now wasn't the time to be thinking about this. In-gong leaned against the wall in a sitting position. He ignored Carack's suspicious gaze and held out his palms.

"Wait a minute."

He closed his eyes and focused his senses. He was able to sense the new energy in his body without difficulty.

"Ohh, I sense it."

This was Aura. It was only level one, but he still had Aura!

In-gong's eyes shone while Carack's eyes widened.

"I can feel something."

"Aura. I asked Caitlin noona to hit me with her aura so that I could feel it."

"Huh? Then you've awakened Aura by feeling it?"

Carack was dumbfounded. In-gong quickly dismissed it with his hands.

"No, that's not it. It is hard to explain."

It really was difficult to explain.

Carack bit his lip, like he was thinking, before nodding.

"I understand. Anyway, I am glad that you are safe. Congratulations on awakening Aura."

"Yes, you should also celebrate. Killing Kaichin is a big achievement."

'By the way, what about the reward for the merits?'

In the game, a prince who achieved great merit would receive compensation from the

Demon King's Palace. Things like getting an increase in monthly living expenses, receiving good items or receiving permission to access various facilities in the Demon King's Palace.

'Should I ask for Carack?'

Carack had originally been a local warrior.

'Yes, I shouldn't separate from him. That boat had already sailed after I gave him the axe.'

So be it. He might even give him another dwarf weapon later on.

While In-gong was nodding to himself, Carack stared at him with a strange look. He looked around for a while before saying in a cautious tone,

"That- In fact, I wanted to ask you something."

"What do you want to ask?"

"Well, there was something strange when we were fighting. All of a sudden, power suddenly burst into my body? Besides... Um..."

"What is it?"

"That... It is strange but I felt loyalty toward Prince? The emotion was like a burning flame."

Below the King's Flag.

A king could give power to his followers by drawing out hidden power from them.

In-gong answered with a smile.

"That's right. I enhanced your power."

"Ohh? Nevertheless, Prince is also a prince!"

"Yes, so serve me well."

"I understand."

Carack grinned and nodded. He was happy but his face still looked quite fierce.

'Should Carack just be my subordinate? He fought well today.'

His first subordinate wasn't a beautiful succubus or dark elf but beggars couldn't be choosers.

"By the way, can I hear about the progress of today's battle? I haven't heard from Caitlin or Chris."

He wasn't able to hear any important news due to the conversation about Aura.

Carack nodded and explained with clenched fists.

"Prince Chris and Princess Caitlin have destroyed Kaichin's position. We killed Kaichin and Kaidum. It was a sweeping victory thanks to us! We succeeded in taking over a military headquarters."

In-gong cocked his head for a moment after hearing the story.

"Wait a minute, military headquarters?"

"H-have you forgotten this as well?"

Carack asked with wide eyes. In-gong frowned.

"Wasn't it only Chris, Caitlin and I who came to quell the Red Lightning tribe?"

"That is impossible. The Red Lightning tribe isn't lacking troops."

This made a lot of sense. Including Carack, Shutra only had 31 troops. Caitlin had dozens more soldiers than Shutra. However, if they combined their troops with Chris, it would only reach up to 400.

There was a military headquarters. Chris, Caitlin and In-gong didn't have enough troops to take it over.



"Who took the military headquarters?"

In-gong asked quickly. He felt an ominous premonition.

Carack scratched the back of his head and replied.

"General Vandal."

The ogre Vandal that was the match of 100 warriors.

He was the one closest to Zephyr.

Author's Note:

These questions will come up sooner or later, so I will answer them in advance.

Q : What species is the Demon King?

A : The Demon King is a 'sura.'

Therefore, all of the Demon King's children are half sura + half another species.

E.g. Shutra: Sura + gandharva/ Chris, Caitlin: sura + lycanthrope (Gallehed who is Caitlin's father is also a sura).

The rest of the children will gradually be revealed (the species of the queens are different)

# Chapter 12

## Alliance #3

From the tip of his head to his toes, he was four metres tall. His body was one of the largest among the ogres and he had a power that surpassed even the giants.

Among Zephyr's followers, just his physical attack power could be considered the strongest.

In-gong swallowed his saliva as he was reminded of Vandal's specs and appearance. When he was playing Zephyr, he really liked having Vandal as a subordinate.

'I have to go against Vandal using Carack?'

In-gong compared them involuntarily. It was clear that Carack was no match for Vandal.

Vandal the ogre warrior - an ogre that could face 100 enemies alone. Wasn't he equivalent to Zhang Fei in the Three Kingdoms?

'By the way... is there a reason to think like this?'

Right now, it was Year 512. However, Vandal hadn't become Zephyr's subordinate until Year 515.

In other words, Vandal wasn't Zephyr's yet.

'Isn't this an opportunity?'

He could obtain Vandal as a subordinate. This meant more than getting his hands on Vandal. It meant that Zephyr's power would be weakened!

In-gong swallowed with excitement involuntarily. As his increase in level caused a rise in intelligence, he started remembering more things.

Vandal liked royal gifts. The female ogres that Vandal liked. Vandal's specialties.

And the most important condition to obtaining Vandal!

In-gong sighed for a long moment. Vandal's condition was to defeat him in a one-on-one fight.

His desire to serve a strong ruler was one of his primary character traits.

'Just...keep an eye on him.'

Anyway, Vandal wouldn't become Zephyr's subordinate until Year 515. There was still enough time.

"Prince?"

Carack called out to In-gong with an anxious expression. He had become excited then sad all on his own, so it was natural for Carack to be confused.

"Ah, I was wondering about General Vandal. How many troops does he have?"

Carack replied sincerely to In-gong's question.

"He has a total of 3,000 people. While we hit the bottom, he knocked over the top of the Red Lightning tribe."

In-gong pictured it in his head. The main army of the Red Lightning tribe was in a different place.

'Then we detoured around the enemy.'

Their battlefields were in different places. so he wouldn't meet Vandal for a while.

'Yes, I will concentrate on Caitlin.'

Chris and Caitlin were more important than Vandal at the moment.

"I'm glad that you are okay. Rest well."

Carack laughed and got up to leave. In-gong nodded, then he suddenly reached out to grab the leaving Carack.

“Carack!”

"What is it?

Carack asked and In-gong rubbed his belly.

“I am hungry. Give me rice.”

He hadn’t eaten anything since lunch.

Carack nodded and left.

Once the next morning arrived, In-gong was facing Caitlin. As expected, he ended up meeting with the two people.

"Don’t do that again.”

Caitlin’s face was hard. It was almost as cold as the time Zephyr caught Caitlin.

Chris just laughed and said,

"You shocked Caitlin yesterday. Don’t you know I would have been beaten to death if you died?”

“Oppa.”

Caitlin glared at him and Chris shut his mouth. However, his eyes were still full of playfulness.

It was especially obvious when he looked between In-gong and Caitlin. Fortunately, even though she had a cold face like she had when facing Zephyr, Caitlin’s eyes were worried. In-gong was pleasantly surprised and held back his laughter.

"Hmm, hmm. I’m okay and thanks to that, didn’t I awaken?”

After In-gong’s words, the two people didn’t respond immediately. Caitlin blinked at

his words while Chris got up blankly from his seat.

"Perhaps?"

Chris didn't say anything else. He walked in front of In-gong and placed a big hand on In-gong's wrist.

A red aura covered Chris' hands. At that moment, In-gong felt the aura inside his body reacting.

"This child, did you really?"

Chris was shocked. His eyes showed that he couldn't believe it.

"Did you really just awaken Aura?"

He muttered again like it was absurd. In-gong thought it was quite funny and answered with a small smile.

"No, feeling Aura directly was important."

He felt it. It was right that he awakened after being hit but he couldn't possible say it directly like that.

"Hah, oh my god. What is this guy? Was he someone who hid his claws?"

Shutra's nickname was Prince of Scraps. Shutra was a sickly prince who was less skilled than an ordinary Villager A.

However, at present, he just woke up Aura with his own power? Moreover, he did it after experiencing a real Aura once?

"Shutra, can you activate your aura? I will help you."

Caitlin regained herself and said to In-gong. There was a little bit of excitement in her voice.

'Activate my aura? Is she talking about the Aura system?'

It didn't end after awakening Aura.

Feeling Aura was just the first step. In fact, this was no different from before Aura was awakened. It was just preparation for developing Aura.

Activating Aura was the second step.

It was often called the step where Internal Strength type Aura was utilized.

There were many applications of the Internal Strength Aura system but the basics were the same. It was to make the circulation of Aura in the body faster and stronger. The use of Internal Strength Aura greatly improved physical abilities. Caitlin's slender arms were capable of a lot of force thanks to Internal Strength Aura.

The third step was to externally release Aura.

Aura would literally drain out of the body. Once this stage was reached, weapons could be covered with Aura or it could be shot out like energy. It was commonly referred to as an aura blade in games and manga.

Finally, the last step was the embodiment of Aura. The power of the soul would be symbolized through Aura.

This was the ultimate stage of Aura and humans called it the Heavenly Sword.

Anyhow, In-gong was merely at the first step of awakening Aura.

Yet, she wanted him to try and activate it now?

"Hey, that is too hard. How is he supposed to activate Aura when he just got it yesterday? He would have to be a genius to do that."

Chris shook his head like it was ridiculous but Caitlin was unmovable.

"Just try it once."

Then she grasped In-gong's hand lightly. In-gong blinked with surprise at the light touch.

Usually strong warriors had calluses on their hands but Caitlin didn't have any. In-gong was surprised but he had the perspective of a pre-university student who had just graduated high school, so he was just surprised by the softness.

'It feels good.'

His face turned red. Fortunately, Caitlin was focused on In-gong's hands instead of his face.

"I'll start. Just follow me."

Caitlin took a deep breath and closed her eyes. In-gong thought, 'Long eyelashes!' While he was thinking, a blue aura covered him slowly.

It was being guided and In-gong made his aura mimic the movements.

It might have been possible if In-gong really was a genius who awakened Aura after experiencing it. However, In-gong wasn't such a genius.

After closing his eyes and trying to concentrate, In-gong finally changed his mind and glanced up.

Chris was staring at Caitlin while Caitlin was concentrating with her eyes closed.

'I'd like to surprise them.'

It wasn't just that. Right now, Aura was a necessary skill for In-gong. There were no room for slow growth, so he used the skill points.

[Aura Lv2]

In-gong used the system to increase the level of Aura. At that moment, Caitlin opened her eyes. She noticed something about In-gong.

In-gong's aura was active. He followed Caitlin and started his own lively movements.

Caitlin was startled and her mouth dropped open. It was evident that she wanted to praise him but that wasn't the end of her surprise.

'It still isn't enough to be used in battle. I would be a fool to close my eyes now.'

He used his remaining skill points.

[Aura Lv3]

A pale white light glowed from where Caitlin and In-gong's hands were joined. Caitlin's face froze while Chris' eyes widened from where he was watching on the sidelines.

"G-genius?"

Wasn't he a person who had just awakened Aura yesterday? Now, he had reached the basics of release?

Of course, In-gong hadn't completely mastered Internal Strength Aura despite reaching the third step.

The second and third steps were virtually parallel steps. Moreover, In-gong was only at the basics for both stages.

However, even that was abnormal. Despite the racial characteristics of a lycanthrope, a good teacher and abundant talent, even Chris needed a year to reach this stage.

"Amazing."

Caitlin declared. She stared at In-gong with sparkling eyes and laughed brightly.

"Really amazing!"

'Kuk, I feel cleansed.'

Her sunny smile stabbed at In-gong's conscience. In-gong sneaked a peek at Chris. He was so shocked that it was like he lost his soul.

'Should I feel sorry?'

However, it was a good thing.



In-gong looked back towards Caitlin and a manly smile appeared.

Author's Note:

There will be more about Aura later.

--

Charm is separate from appearance.

So, what is it?

A person might be attracted to both a person that is handsome and a person that is ordinary but nice.

That is a type of charm.

--

A number of skill points are required to increase the level of a skill.

In particular, Aura and Telekinesis, which are base skills, require many points.

# Chapter 13

## Alliance #4

In-gong hadn't increased Aura just to surprise Chris and Caitlin.

Right now, Aura had more uses than Telekinesis.

Aura had the effect of raising his overall physical abilities.

It wasn't comparable to natural athletic exercise but it was halfway there. Even having low experience in the technique was enough to give him an excellent physical performance.

It was the same for fighting. Without this technique, a faster and stronger person was likely to win.

'Telekinesis takes practice. Moreover, it was difficult to exert a threatening power from the beginning.'

He didn't want to throw it away but he wouldn't invest resources in it yet.

In-gong had been saving the additional stat points and skill points since his first level up. There were two reasons for this.

Firstly, he didn't know what ability would be most efficient to invest points in.

Secondly, there were many requirements if the next level was a high level. Therefore, it would more efficient to gather the points and use them when needed.

It was a common idea for a gamer.

However, In-gong revised his plan after experiencing a battle.

Skill points? He would use them. It was more important to survive than to grow at peak efficiency. He needed to grow to live.

However, he decided to leave some of the additional points. It would be saved for when he found a skill he wanted, like Aura.

'Although, I shouldn't be too choosy.'

He had some freedom due to Carack and his men. If In-gong had to survive alone, he would have gone with endurance and durability type skills without hesitation.

"Isn't this a terrific talent? It is amazing that there hasn't been any rumours."

Chris spoke in a voice mixed with admiration and his eyes were shining with a strong curiosity.

"Sometimes, talent may bloom late."

Caitlin said from next to him. In-gong didn't know why but she had a proud expression. It was like she was thinking, 'my brother is so good!'

'But I am also Chris' younger brother.'

In-gong laughed while gazing at Chris. Chris was overflowing with interest and kept on nodding.

"A waste. Really a waste. I want to be your teacher."

There were a number of responses that could come out when facing something like this but there were two big ones.

One was jealousy while the other was a favourable impression.

They would like to raise him. They would want to make a genius and he wouldn't be left to rot.

Fortunately, both Caitlin and Chris seemed to be the latter type.

'However, it will be hard.'

The relationship between the children of the queens and concubines were fairly

complicated. Chris and Caitlin being friendly with In-gong was an entirely different matter from becoming his subordinates. Additionally, this involved teaching him Aura.

Many people couldn't compete with the lycanthropes due to Aura, so this was a sensitive thing to do.

It was upsetting but In-gong had to give up. However, Chris wasn't dissuaded.

"Hey, Shutra."

Chris said, flinging his arms around In-gong. Then speaking in a low voice like he was telling a secret,

"Can I teach you? Although it will only be limited to this expedition."

Chris, prince of the lycanthropes, would teach him Aura directly.

Based on In-gong's position, it was a really welcome offer but In-gong thought about it once again before accepting it.

'Right now, what should I do?'

The children of the Demon King didn't just fight each other. Of course, there were alliances called factions.

There were many factors in determining a faction but the biggest part was the relationship between mothers.

Whether the children liked each other or not, the children whose mothers were in a good relationship or alliance belonged to the same faction. On the other hand, no matter how much the children got along, those with mothers who hated each other would always be enemies. It was like Romeo and Juliet.

Knight Saga began in Year 513 which was one year from now. However, In-gong knew the composition of the factions among the children.

'There are only three children without factions.'

One was Shutra and the other two were Chris and Caitlin.

Chris and Caitlin always played with each other. Meanwhile, Shutra was always alone because none of the factions wanted him.

'If I think of it in another manner, can't I secure Chris and Caitlin for my faction?'

His mother's family was weak but In-gong had talent. His talent was brimming over. It wasn't necessarily useless - this was Chris' judgement of the situation.

It wasn't bad for In-gong. Right now, he needed powerful allies he could rely on.

If there was one problem, it was the secret of Caitlin's birth.

It was a story that was really cool to talk about. However, it was a big problem - he might get caught up in the children complaining about Chris and Caitlin.

'No. I won't let that happen.'

In-gong turned toward Caitlin.

"Noona, what do you think?"

"It is a good idea."

Caitlin nodded with a serious expression.

Chris said with a long face,

"It is better to learn from me than from Caitlin. When it comes to Aura, I am better in terms of delicate handling. No, just learn from both of us. Caitlin, is that okay?"

"Yes, it is okay. Noona will teach you well."

Caitlin responded quickly as she stared straight at In-gong. Her eyes were full of motivation.

"Thank you, I'll ask you to look after me well."

'Okay, then let's talk about work now.'

Chris grinned and headed towards the neglected battlefield map on the table.

Chris explained the whole situation in a way that was easy to understand. Thanks to the battlefield map, the movements of General Vandal and the main army were clearly visible.

"The battlefield is advantageous this time. We are winning. However, if we keep marching this way, we will reach the base of the Red Lightning tribe. There will be a lot of resistance."

Perhaps, there would be a big fight.

"Shutra, can you make a map of the cave?"

Chris glanced at In-gong with anticipation. Thanks to the cave, Kaichin had been able to be caught. Perhaps, it could be utilized more. Both Caitlin and Chris stared at In-gong.

In-gong wanted to meet their expectations but his answer could only be 'no.'

'I have the mini-map!'

He would be able to draw a map if he used the mini-map.

"Thinking about it, won't I be able to draw it?"

He could just look at the mini-map.

"Um, wait a minute. I will draw it now."

"Huh?"

Chris made a disbelieving sound. Rather than replying, In-gong looked at Caitlin instead.

"Just a moment. Noona, can I borrow pen and paper?"

"Uh, wait a minute."

Caitlin nodded with a little bit of surprise. In-gong smiled and started to draw the mini-map on a large piece of paper. In addition to the cave, In-gong drew what he scouted yesterday.

At first, Caitlin and Chris just watched without any expectations but their eyes soon changed. The road itself was simple but the map was so detailed.

Once In-gong finished drawing the map, Chris alternated between looking at the map and In-gong.

"You, are you really a genius?"

"It is because the road is simple."

In-gong answered bluntly. Rather than announcing the existence of the mini-map, it was better to pretend that he had a good head.

"Shutra has a good brain."

Caitlin nodded with admiration. This time, there was a little bit of envy mixed in.

In-gong just laughed and pointed to the map.

"Anyway...I only explored up to here."

The last time, he had just moved forward and hadn't pay much attention to the mini-map. However, he now noticed a path leading to another place.

Considering the passage in the mountain and the direction it was taking, it was likely that it would continue close to the Red Lightning tribe's camp.

"This cave, I think we should explore it a little more properly."

Chris declared and In-gong nodded.

"Kaidum said it was the first time he used it. Kaichin hadn't known about the passage at all."

Even within the Red Lightning tribe, not many of them knew about the cave. Maybe Kaidum was the last one.

Moreover, there was one important fact.

“They don’t know that we have found the cave.”

So, they could take advantage of this. They could stab the enemy in the back.

Chris smiled at In-gong. A lycanthrope’s smile - it was the smile of a hunter.

Author's Note:

The Demon King has five queens + several concubines.

Among the five queens, there are nine children born who are vying for the throne of the Demon King.

The concubines act as members of the factions.

-That doesn’t mean there are no opportunities for children of the concubines. The Demon World is an area for the strong.

-I want to mention that the reason the Demon King has so many wives isn’t because he is horny =3=;; but for political reasons.



# Chapter 14

## Alliance #5

After leaving Caitlin's tent, In-gong walked with Carack and talked with him.

Carack nodded at the rough explanation like it was expected.

"Well, then it is another reconnaissance mission."

"It is a little bit rushed but it will begin today. It should be kept secret from others."

It was decided that the cave would be kept a secret from Caitlin and Chris' troops. It was unlikely that the orcs, especially the Red Lightning tribe, would actively engage in espionage activities but there was still a chance.

The faster the passage in the cave was explored, the better it would be. Depending on where the passage in the cave connected to, the whole operation might change in the future.

Carack didn't ask why and only nodded.

"Ah, I did some work while Prince was inside. I have recruited some troops today."

"Recruited troops?"

Carack laughed at In-gong's question.

"We received a lot of damage."

The fight against Kaichin was a melee. It had been a one-sided fight until Carack killed Kaichin, so there were those who were seriously injured and died.

In-gong swallowed his saliva. It wasn't because the damage was greater than he thought. Even if he was concerned with Aura, it was surprising that he hadn't considered the deaths of the orcs until now.

‘Yes, a person is dead. People. It isn’t a game.’

In a game, the lives of the soldiers were just numbers. If he had enough resources, he could increase or decrease the numbers.

However, this wasn’t a game and each of them had their own lives.

After a moment, In-gong took a deep breath. It was unreasonable to pamper each soldier but he shouldn’t think of them casually like he had done previously. If he only thought of people as numbers, then he would be disqualified as a human.

In-gong controlled his heart and looked toward Carack again. Carack’s eyes were asking, ‘what are you thinking about this time?’

In-gong just shrugged.

“So, are the recruits coming?”

"Rather than that... Didn't we used to have 30 troops? This has been increased to 50 people. It will take time for them to reach our base, so the numbers will be supplemented from Prince Chris' camp."

“Ohh?”

The troops had almost been doubled?

"It is due to Prince's merits."

Carack said pleasantly. In fact, In-gong was quite familiar with this situation.

Achievements would be rewarded. That was the basic formula of Knight Saga.

In-gong had distinguished himself by killing Kaichin and Kaidum as well as finding the cave. It was natural for rewards to be received.

‘In the first place, Shutra only received 30 orcs because he had no merits in the past.’

Despite all of them being children of the Demon King, Chris and Caitlin received two

times more orcs than Shutra and even had their lycanthropes.

The reason was simple.

Chris and Caitlin had distinguished themselves as children of the Demon King.

'Well, I will build up my merits from now on.'

It was the power of infinite positivity and he would make it so.

In-gong formed a tight fist to express his resolve and asked Carack.

"Then did Carack receive anything separate?"

Although it was In-gong's merit, Carack was technically the one who killed Kaichin. Carack laughed and tapped on his chest at In-gong's question.

"I got a reward. And I received it from Prince."

Carack proudly lifted the dwarf axe that In-gong gave him.

"I'm glad you like it."

'I still have the items I packed for later. Should I bring out an armour?'

He had decided to carry on with Carack, so he should invest in him. It would be better for In-gong if Carack became stronger.

After having a chat with Carack and returning to the base, In-gong headed toward the cave with his newly joined forces.

The road to the cave was smooth. In the first place, it was close to Shutra's base. It was also under Chris and Caitlin's sphere of influence, thanks to Kaichin's defeat.

'A prince normally rides separately on a horse.'

Just like last time, In-gong walked next to Carack. Usually in games and movies, soldiers walked while nobility were on horseback.

‘That reminds me of something. Chris and Caitlin also seem to be walking around. Is it because they are lycanthropes?’

He used to ride on horses when playing Zephyr. It wasn’t an ordinary horse but a phantom steed that could fly in the sky.

‘I will use it later.’

In-gong, who had been thinking about the past (?), suddenly stopped walking. There were two people in black robes standing in the middle of the road.

“Caitlin noona?”

"Shush."

Caitlin raised a finger to her lips and gestured for In-gong to come closer. In-gong approached Caitlin while Carack stayed behind. He saw that the other person standing there was Caitlin’s aide, Seira, who he had already met at the meeting.

In-gong nodded in response to Seira’s greeting bow and asked Caitlin.

“What is happening all of a sudden? Why are you wearing robes?”

Normally, she wore a blue cloak but at present, she was completely covered by a robe. Caitlin spoke in a low voice.

"I will secretly follow you on this reconnaissance mission. It is in case something serious happens."

He could understand what was going on but he didn’t know why she was joining in secret. In-gong scratched his head and asked,

“Uh... so, you joined unofficially?”

Although she joined In-gong’s reconnaissance mission, it was a secret to the outside world. In other words, she wasn’t here.

Caitlin nodded.

"Yes. I will only move if it becomes really dangerous. This is because they should be Shutra's merits."

In-gong now approximately understood the situation.

They still didn't know how much the Red Lightning tribe knew about the cave. So, Caitlin was accompanying him in case there was danger.

However, if Caitlin was involved, the merits of the reconnaissance mission might become hers. So, she joined unofficially.

'It is true that it is a burden - I am a victim of results-focused education.'

It was reasonable to say that treatment was different depending on merits but it was a huge burden for young children.

'Then that means she wants to give me a push?'

It could be interpreted in several different ways.

One, she wanted to make Shutra more useful by increasing his merits. Two, she wanted to make sure that she became friendlier with Shutra.

'Chris may not know that Caitlin is doing this.'

It was clear that she came to help with a pure heart.

'What type of star was I born under? No, not all children in this world are plotting.'

In-gong nodded as he was convinced and smiled brightly at Caitlin.

"I understand. Thank you, Noona."

"Yes."

Caitlin responded by pulling down her hood and moved to the front of the unit with Seira. Unlike Caitlin, Seira seemed a little bit dissatisfied with the present situation.

'She should be.'

It was a situation where her master had come to serve another prince for free. It wasn't something she would do for Chris.

Once In-gong returned to his position, Carack asked him.

"Is it okay for Princess to join?"

"Uh, just don't think about it and proceed with the operation normally."

Caitlin followed so quietly that Carack no longer looked back.

How much time passed?

In-gong found that other pathway inside the cave that he had described to Chris and Caitlin.

The only difference with the passage was that it led in a different direction. In-gong searched various empty rooms in the passage and frowned as he looked at the mini-map.

"All the rooms are empty."

He was expected an arsenal covered in dust but there were no treasures in the room.

However, Carack didn't seem surprised as he explained.

"Wouldn't people take their valuables when moving? The dwarves would have taken all of it when they migrated."

"Then what about the weapons yesterday?"

"I guess they weren't that valuable."

This was perfect logic. In-gong was speechless as he stared at Carack.

"This guy, is he a genius among orcs?"

He felt strange but it was good for In-gong if his subordinate was competent. In-gong

was convinced of this and looked behind him. Caitlin was almost invisible in the cave due to the dark robe she was wearing.

‘Next time, should I ask her to beat me with magic?’

It was a sudden thought but when thinking about Caitlin and Aura, he was suddenly reminded of magic and divine power.

‘Will she call me a pervert again if I ask her to help me with magic the same way she did Aura?’

In-gong laughed bitterly as he was reminded of Caitlin’s reaction, then he tilted his head.

‘What will happen if I’m hit by magic? Would it awaken? Will I be able to learn magic at all?’

He wanted to experiment. After returning from the reconnaissance mission, he would ask Caitlin to hit him with whatever magic she had.

‘Kuhuhu! Magic, magic.’

In-gong had a lively smile at the thought of being hit by Caitlin. Then In-gong looked up with a frown and Carack had the same reaction.

“Prince.”

Carack raised his axe and said in a low voice. In-gong nodded. The mini-map was showing red dots that meant enemies.

# Chapter 15

## Alliance #6

In-gong's party's was currently located at a place where two passages joined to create a space. He had seen it a few times and it was often a type of living space or room.

The ceiling was high and the space was wide enough to accommodate all 50 orcs.

The monsters seemed to pour out of the passages connected to the room and the mini-map quickly became red.

While everyone was pulling out their weapons, In-gong, who was looking around, suddenly shouted loudly.

"Rock spiders! Close your eyes!"

At In-gong's shout, Carack and most of the orcs covered their eyes. Some of them couldn't react because it was so sudden but he couldn't wait. Instead of shouting again, In-gong closed his eyes tightly and threw something.

There was the sound of glass breaking as light filled the room. In-gong immediately opened his eyes and screamed,

"Open your eyes and attack! Be careful of their paralysis poison!"

He frowned due to the glare but was able to see in front of him. There were grey spiders the size of humans all over the place.

Rock spiders. They were monsters that often appeared in places like dungeons and caves. Dozens of them always gathered at once and they had a strong paralysis poison, so it was hard to fight them.

However, that only applied when it was a frontal attack. They had a fatal weakness and it was light. They lived in the darkness, so if they were exposed to light, they couldn't move or would faint.



‘It is worth preparing this!’

He hadn’t encountered any monsters in the last cave reconnaissance but he had prepared supplies for fighting in caves just in case.

‘It is better to get things when you can!’

Of course, there were no such items containing flash magic in Shutra’s base. Everything he prepared was what Chris had received. There had been no guarantee he would meet any monsters in the cave but after the rock spiders came out, he was glad he’d prepared things.

‘Rock spiders hunt in groups and a group must always have a boss!’

He was sure of it because that was always the case in a game!

‘Boss, let’s find the boss!’

The rock spider boss was two to three times the size of an ordinary rock spider. In-gong confirmed the presence of the largest dot in the passage on the mini-map. Indeed, there was a fairly large red dot among the small ones.

“Carack! Follow me! The boss!”

Instead of pulling out a sword, he picked up a torch the orcs had dropped nearby. The biggest weakness of the rock spider was light and the next one was fire.

“I understand!”

Carack cried out loudly. He did the opposite of In-gong’s order and ran in front of In-gong instead of behind. The ends justified the means if it allowed them to find the boss.

Carack wielded his large axe at the rock spiders. In-gong ran along Carack’s path and took out something again.

"One more time! Close your eyes!"

He wanted to place the rock spider boss in a stunned state. Rather than gazing at the

big, wriggling legs, In-gong closed his eyes and threw a bottle that had a flash effect.

The light seemed more intense to In-gong because it exploded in a narrow passage. Of course, In-gong couldn't see with his eyes closed.

In-gong counted up to three before happily opening his eyes.

'It is more like a king crab than a spider.'

The rock spider, that was much bigger than a human, was stunned and had its stomach exposed. Without even needing a command from In-gong, Carack rushed forward and swung his axe.

Kakang!

Once the axe collided with the stomach, it sounded like metal being hit. Carack was confused by the hard shell that was beyond imagination. However, In-gong lifted his torch.

"Carack! It is weak to fire!"

However, the torch broke once the rock spider boss was hit with it. What was this? Carack's axe bounced off the shell? The torch broke when it was hit?

'Should I try Aura?'

When he thought about it, he had to try it. In-gong concentrated and activated Aura. It was at that moment.

"Shutra! Your sword!"

Caitlin's voice was heard from the rear. Whether it was magic or Caitlin's voice, In-gong quickly jumped back and pulled the sword hanging from his waist.

"Burning Blade!"

Sparks flew as Caitlin shouted. It was clearly magic that gave a fire attribute.

"Ohhh?"

Magic, magic!

'Then can I learn Burning Blade?'

In-gong imagined the scene of Caitlin aiming a knife of fire at him and quickly shook his head.

'I can't be hit with a fire sword!'

In-gong stabbed the stomach of the rock spider boss with the sword. In-gong was sweating as he demonstrated the strength of Aura Lv3. The shell was weakened by Carack's axe and the sparks, so In-gong's sword dug into the rock spider boss' stomach.

"Oratsshya!"

In-gong moved his sword and disemboweled it. As Carack's axe struck its bared body, the legs of the rock spider boss twitched.

'Wah! Awesome!'

In-gong swung his sword vigorously and struck the head of the rock spider boss with his sword.

"Keek!"

The movements of the rock spider boss' legs became more bizarre and disturbing. Carack grabbed the legs while In-gong pulled out the sword lodged in its head.

"Shutra! A little bit more!"

Caitlin ran to his side and cheered him on instead of attacking the rock spider boss. It seemed like she intended to let In-gong catch it by himself.

"Yes! Noona!"

Having someone cheer him on from the sidelines gave him more strength. He swung his sword again at the rock spider boss' head.

There were no screams this time. The wriggling legs stopped moving.

It was a sight that convinced In-gong the boss was dead.

[Your level has risen.]

Even though Carack had helped him, In-gong's strikes were the most significant. Moreover, the rock spiders weren't monsters that he could catch, originally. It was natural to receive a lot of experience.

'Ohh, level nine!'

In-gong was delighted and tried to check his status window and skill window. However, Caitlin was a little bit faster.

"Shutra? Are you okay?"

Both worry and surprise could be seen on her face. In-gong understood why after a moment. It was due to the light generated from his level up.

"Ah, yes. I'm okay. That- the light is similar to a blessing. It sometimes happens. Isn't that right, Carack?"

"Yes. I've seen it a few times."

Carack agreed with his words but it was still a problem. What was the blessing? Why did these lights occur and what were the effects? There weren't just one or two things that he had to deal with.

Thankfully, Caitlin said one word that resolved everything.

"Gandharva?"

"Yes, gandharva."

In fact, gandharva didn't have this characteristic but he used it as an excuse. Among the many species, gandharva was a minority. And In-gong- no, Shutra was a mix of sura

and gandharva. It was a result of that.

“Thank you for the magic assistance. It was great.”

Her assistance was really helpful and timely. Caitlin shook her head with a bright expression.

“It is thanks to Shutra. I just used the magic that Shutra said.”

“Huh? Haven’t you fought rock spiders before?”

“Today is the first time.”

‘Huh, then did she give me the magic because she heard me shouting at Carack?’

Although it was somewhat obvious, he couldn’t help but feel admiration for the actions.

“Have you fought these guys before? To be honest, I was a little surprised.”

Caitlin repeated the question at In-gong.

“Eh... I just read about it before in a book.”

He had only fought against them in the game but he did read about it in a book. He saw them for the first time in an Internet strategy guide. When looking at it broadly, it was correct that he’d read it in a book.

“Noona, let’s talk about this later. I need to sort out my troops.”

“Yes.”

Caitlin nodded and placed the hood back over her head. The flames disappeared from his sword and In-gong headed back to the main party with Carack.

# Chapter 16

## Alliance #7

The orcs rested around the perimeter while In-gong, Caitlin, Carack and Seira gathered in a circle in the middle.

"It might be too early to judge but the Red Lightning tribe doesn't seem to be using this passage."

After hearing Carack's words, In-gong asked,

"Is it because a lot of monsters came out?"

"Yes, if they use it, there wouldn't be many rock spiders.

The rock spiders had poured out from every direction in the cave. Orcs weren't small worms, so it was hard to imagine the rock spiders leaving them alone.

'By the way, is Carack really a genius among the orcs?'

In-gong stared at Carack with admiration while Seira, who had been watching quietly, spoke up.

"Isn't it possible that the Red Lightning tribe are controlling the monsters? That is a possibility, so we should stay on guard."

Seira displayed caution despite how young she looked and sounded.

In-gong was confused because he hadn't thought about that, so he asked Carack.

"Carack, is there anyone who has that ability in the Red Lightning tribe?"

Was there an occupation with the ability to control monsters?

Carack immediately responded to In-gong's question like there was no need to think.

"How can I know that?"

It was reasonable that Carack wouldn't know about the enemy.

In-gong stared at Carack with a sour expression before shifting his gaze to Seira. However, Caitlin was the one who spoke instead of Seira.

"The possibility is low. If they had such abilities, they would be controlling the monsters in the battlefield, instead of the cave. Isn't that right, Seira?"

"Yes, Caitlin."

Based on her reply, it seemed like she had already thought that way.

'No, then why did she ask me about it? A quarrel? Or is it to keep me in check? She wants to keep me in check?'

However, it gave him a chance to review a possibility he hadn't thought about before. In-gong calmed down his excitement and said to everyone,

"Well, okay. Then let's check this location for a while. Carack, give me the bag."

"Understood."

Carack handed him a small bag tied to his back. In-gong placed his hand in the bag, activated his inventory and pulled out blank paper, a map and writing instruments.

'It is too complicated to explain the inventory to Caitlin.'

He might explain it someday but not right now.

"Huh? Those things were inside the bag?"

"Yes, that's right."

In-gong lied and spread out the map while Carack stayed silent. It was a large map showing the mountain and swamp where the cave was located.

‘The scale of this map and the mini-map...’

When he focused, the cave couldn’t be seen with the naked eye. In-gong drew the mountain on a blank piece of paper. It didn’t take a long time because the map was laid out next to it.

Caitlin watched In-gong and asked.

"Are you trying to draw the map?"

“Yes, if I draw a map of the cave and the mountain then we can tell where our current location is.”

Caitlin nodded at In-gong’s words but Seira and Carack made a strange sound.

"Prince, haven’t you walked with me so far?"

"Yes, that’s right."

Carack watched as In-gong drew lines slowly. It was a lot easier than the last time he drew a map in front of Caitlin and Chris due to the ‘Map Reading’ skill.

At first, Seira stared blankly but then her eyes gradually turned to disbelief. She thought he was just drawing the map roughly but it was too accurate.

"Did you remember the path all the way up to here? No, how is this possible even if you memorize it...?"

It wasn’t simply memorizing. That fact that the passage coincided with the shape of the mountain meant that he knew the exact direction and length of the passage.

Was this possible for a person? Did he had a compass in his head?

"I told you that Shutra is amazing."

Caitlin spoke on In-gong’s behalf, boasting proudly in an odd tone.

In-gong laughed because it was quite cute, then went back to focusing on drawing the map again. Then after approximately five minutes? In-gong had completed the map up



to their present location and put down the writing instrument.

"We've come approximately half-way."

In-gong had moved near to the center of the mountain. No matter what direction they travelled, they would have to move the same distance in order to leave.

"Seira, is this the place where the Red Lightning tribe is supposed to be?"

"Yes, Princess."

Caitlin picked up a stone and placed it on the map.

"The passage will open near that area."

If there was an exit behind the base of the Red Lightning tribe, they could plan an operation to strike. Some troops would lure the Red Lightning tribe while the ones moving through the cave would occupy the base.

"Uhh, but won't it take a long time to move through the passage? We can only pack enough for a day."

Carack asked with an anxious face. The shape of the passage in the cave changed quite often.

Despite moving for a long time, they had only reached the middle of the passage in the cave. However, there were five passages connected to this area. It was unknown how many days it would take to go through this cave.

"Well, once Caitlin noona finds the passage linked with the cave, we can return. So, there is no need to worry."

"Ah, is that so? Then should we go through this passage?"

Carack pointed to one of the passages on In-gong's map. It was the passage with the shortest line towards the base of the Red Lightning tribe.

"Yes, we will most likely have to go through a swamp."

As expected, Carack was smart.

In-gong nodded then pretended to place the map in the bag while storing it in his inventory and spoke to Caitlin.

"Then Noona, we should depart. We can rest somewhere else."

The rock spider corpses didn't smell strangely but he couldn't ignore the possibility of other monsters coming.

"Yes, I'll be in the rear like before."

Caitlin nodded, wore the hood again and moved with Seira.

"We are leaving. Set off."

"Understood."

Carack ordered the orcs in a loud voice. It didn't take a long time for them to depart.

Fortunately, the passage they took had a simple structure. In-gong stretched out a hand and touched the air as he walked with Carack.

'If I use it a lot, the skills will increase.'

There were generally two methods to increase skill levels in Knight Saga.

One, investing skill points to instantly raise the level.

Two, just use it often and the skill level would naturally increase.

It was obvious but the second option took longer than expected. There weren't enough skill points.

'There is a third method that isn't common.'

It didn't involve the amount of experience or skill points. There was nothing certain about it. If he experienced a certain event or reached a certain level, the level would automatically rise.

As In-gong walked, he classified skills into four categories.

One, important skills that were worth investing skill points in. Aura and Telekinesis belonged here.

Two, there were those he would use in order to naturally increase the level. Skills like Map Reading that weren't worth investing skill points in belonged here.

Three, there were the skills that In-gong couldn't increase. Skills related to the Conquest Knight, such as Below the King's Flag and the mysterious Protagonist Correction, belonged here.

Of course, there were four categories. The last one contained things like Basic Swordsmanship.

'Uhh, should I invest the points earned this time into Aura again?'

Or Telekinesis?

'I would like to learn swordsmanship and martial arts.'

Although he didn't want to invest skill points into Basic Swordsmanship, the story was different when it came to powerful martial arts.

Zephyr's sword technique, Heavenly King Sword, sounded strong just by hearing the name. There was also Locke's Warrior's Sword.

The names of several martial arts techniques flashed through his mind.

'What should I pick up?'

In fact, there were many hidden techniques in Knight Saga. They could be attained by clearing special events, defeating powerful monsters or by purchasing them from a treasure trader.

'Okay, I will focus on the things I can do.'

In-gong organized his thoughts and activated Aura. He thought about investing skill

points but there was no time to do that.

“Prince.”

As soon as he activated Aura, Carack called out to him. In-gong deactivated Aura with a little bit of distress and looked around for Carack.

“What?”

“There is something over here.”

Carack pointed to a small room off the passage where the interior could be seen because there was no door.

In-gong stopped the troops and entered the room with Carack. It was a square-shaped room, approximately seven metres on each side.

There was nothing special on the ceiling or walls but the floor was different. There were complex patterns engraved inside a large circle.

“Town Portal?”

“Huh? You know what it is?”

Carack asked after In-gong muttered reflexively. In-gong responded moderately with a lowered posture.

“No, I just guessed.”

He wasn't sure. No matter how he looked, it was similar to the magic circles that were town portals in the game.

‘It must be a dwarf version.’

He never saw them as Zephyr but he had seen it a few times when playing as Locke.

‘Will it work if magic power is injected?’

He looked around and found a crystal ball in the middle of the circle where someone

could insert magic power.

“What’s going on?”

It was Caitlin and Seira. In-gong replied,

"That. It seems like a town portal. Doesn't it, Noona?"

Caitlin seemed confused by In-gong's question.

“Seira?”

“It is highly likely.”

"Indeed."

Her cheeks turned slightly red. In-gong looked around the magic circle and asked,

"Where does it go?"

“It looks like a dwarf circle... It should go near here.”

While Seira was replying, Carack called out to In-gong from one side of the room.

"Prince, letters... There are pictures that look like letters."

In-gong went over and saw letters that weren't commonly used in the Demon World. Caitlin spoke from next to In-gong and Carack.

“They are dwarf characters.”

“Ohh, as expected of Princess. Can you read dwarf characters?”

Carack asked with great admiration. In-gong also watched Caitlin with anticipation in his eyes.

Caitlin frowned and spoke in a timid voice,

“Uh...Seira?”

She couldn't read it. In-gong suppressed his urge to smile and glanced at Seira but Seira also looked confused.

"Uh... Well... They are dwarf characters."

"Who doesn't know that? Princess just said it."

Carack stared at Seira like she was ridiculous. Seira just looked elsewhere and didn't reply.

'Well, it can't be helped.'

The dwarves had left hundreds of years ago. It was amazing that Caitlin and Seira even recognized that they were dwarf characters.

"Carack, it is natural. I mean this is... Jishuka Mountain's Portal Two. It is connected with Portal Three. Eh?"

In-gong spoke unwittingly and Carack, Caitlin and Seira stared at him.

At the time, In-gong heard a clear voice in his head.

[Dwarf Characters Lv1 has been learnt.]

# Chapter 17

## Alliance #8

He didn't know it at first. Just like Carack, he had thought of them as pictures.

However, when he tried to read the characters, he could.

'What the, what is this? I can learn characters and languages like this?'

Of course, it was only level one, so it was likely he couldn't interpret complex documents. However, just having the ability to decipher text by looking at it was really enormous.

'Doesn't that mean I don't need to worry about foreign languages now? Isn't that right?'

He had the ability to learn what he saw! Then he wouldn't have to go through a lot of difficulty!

While In-gong was busy screaming inwardly, Carack, Caitlin and Seira were staring at him blankly.

Carack spoke first,

"Uh...Prince. Can you read this?"

Why would he say that he couldn't read it when they already heard him?

Anyhow, In-gong returned to reality thanks to Carack and nodded.

"Uh, yes. Just a little bit."

"Amazing."

Caitlin - her golden eyes shone like a morning star.

Moreover, it wasn't just Caitlin.

"I am impressed by Prince Shutra's broad knowledge."

Seira was also clearly impressed.

'What the? Is it that rare for someone to know dwarf characters?'

The dwarves still lived, so it wasn't an ancient language.

'I just need to say that I took a book and taught myself.'

Carack switched the topic while In-gong was thinking.

"Then Prince, what does this say?"

Caitlin and Seira's eyes turned back to the writing. Thanks to Carack, their somewhat uncomfortable gazes shifted from In-gong to the characters.

"Wait a minute."

It was only level one, so his reading comprehension wasn't that fast. There were some words that had cryptic meanings.

'Is this explaining how to use it?'

In-gong read it three times before pointing to a character that had a metal plate protruding from below it.

"Noona, can you insert a little bit of magic power here? My magic power is clumsy."

He didn't know how to use it at all. However, he couldn't ask her to hit him with magic power at this time.

"Understood."

Caitlin nodded and inserted magic power into the metal plate. A blue light then shone between the engraved characters and a 3D hologram consisting of blue lines appeared



in front of In-gong.

“Jishuka Mountain Range.”

Like Carack said, it was a 3D hologram with a bird’s eye view of the Jishuka Mountains. In-gong read the letters that appeared with the bird’s eye view and pointed to different areas.

“We are here. The Portal Three is over here.”

Portal Three was in another mountain but there was something strange about the response. Seira’s face turned excited.

"Does that mean there is a dwarf cave there?"

“Uh, why?”

In-gong was surprised by Seira’s words and Carack who was familiar with In-gong quickly said,

"Prince, in front of that mountain is the Red Lightning tribe’s main force. This mountain is right behind them!"

In-gong was able to understand now. Seira asked again,

"Prince, is this still working despite being degraded?"

“Perhaps?”

In-gong looked at the letters that came up near the bird’s eye view. The letters showed that the portal was lacking magic power but no other problems.

Only magic power was required to operate the portal. It meant the passage to the rear of the Red Lightning tribe could be used.

"Princess."

Seira called out to Caitlin. Her voice and eyes were mixed with various emotions.

Caitlin sent Seira a stern look and shook her head slowly. She then placed her hand on In-gong's shoulders and declared,

"Shutra, this is your merit. I'm not officially here."

Seira sighed but Caitlin never looked back.

In-gong was able to guess the reason why she was sad.

The strategic value of the dwarf portal was very significant. It was evident that a huge reward would be given to the first discoverer.

However, Caitlin had declared she wasn't here and kept her promise.

"Noona, just..."

"It is your merit. You would have reached here even if I wasn't present. You also figured out its usage. I don't want to be a liar. Don't you remember what I said in the first place?"

It wasn't just a courtesy. Caitlin had truly come along to protect him.

In-gong nodded eventually.

"I understand, Noona. Thank you."

Caitlin laughed and covered herself with the hood again. Seira had a severe frown on her face but followed her master's actions.

"Shutra, let's return to Chris oppa once we have confirmed that the portal is working. A more serious investigation into this cave is needed."

They had to inform that main army of the existence of the portal and secure it as soon as possible. In-gong already had a lot of merits, so there was no big difference if Chris and Caitlin's troops were committed to protecting it.

"Okay, then please do it again here."

In-gong pointed to the crystal ball in the center of the magic circle.

Caitlin nodded and touched the crystal ball, immediately inserting magic power.

It was already late at night when In-gong returned to the base. In spite of that fact, In-gong and Caitlin immediately headed to Chris' tent.

"Oppa will be really surprised."

Those were the only words Caitlin said and they made Chris shift his gaze to In-gong.

"Hey, what is it?"

"I'll explain it."

In-gong coughed and spread his map of the cave on the desk. Although it was unfinished and only drawn to the middle, Chris immediately found the value of the map.

"We can hit Kairam from behind."

Kairam was Kaichin's brother and the leader of the Red Lightning army currently confronting Chris.

Chris looked at Caitlin with surprise. Caitlin slowly smiled and shook her head.

"What? Is there something else?"

"There is."

Caitlin remained silent again. This time, Chris looked at In-gong and In-gong explained everything that happened in the cave.

Chris was surprised by the talk about the portal.

He was confused about the part where In-gong could read dwarf characters and became expressionless after hearing that the portal was connected to the back of the Red Lightning tribe.

"Uh, Oppa?"

Caitlin asked cautiously as Chris' reaction was different from what she had expected. Chris just stared at In-gong.

"You, what is your identity?"

"Eh?"

This time, In-gong was the one who panicked. Did he realize something strange about Shutra?

While In-gong was licking his lips and wondering about what to say, Chris suddenly burst into laughter. He spread his arms wide and embraced In-gong.

"Wow, this is a blessing! A blessing!"

It was like finding a vein of gold.

Caitlin sighed with relief after seeing Chris' excitement and In-gong was the same.

"Okay, okay. The dwarves did something this cute in the Jishuka Mountains? We will use it a lot."

It wasn't just this battle. The use of these passages and portals could completely change the value of the Jishuka Mountains.

'He is different from Caitlin.'

It wasn't simply because he was two years older.

Chris was real royalty. He was an ambitious person and thought about more than what was in front of him. He had faced Chris and Caitlin when playing Zephyr but their natures were different. Caitlin was a powerful warrior and Chris was the king of the lycanthropes.

In-gong realized that Chris wasn't as pure as Caitlin. His eyes saw In-gong's value.

"Shutra, what do you want?"

"What do I want?"

"Yes, your wish. You will be rewarded by the Demon King's Palace for your merits but I also want to give you a prize as your brother and captain."

Chris, Caitlin and In-gong were children of the Demon King but Chris was the one in charge of the troops. It wasn't strange for Chris to say that he would give a reward.

'But...'

In-gong took a deep breath. In-gong might be mistaken but Chris was probably trying to grab hold of In-gong right now. It was different from when Chris said that he would teach Aura.

'Come into my faction. Join me.'

Depending on what In-gong asked, his relationship with Chris might change.

"Is it okay even if it is a little unreasonable?"

In-gong's words were somewhat provocative but Chris just smiled.

"Ho? A little unreasonable? What are you asking for?"

He could ask for a competent subordinate or he could ask for an item that couldn't be handled by the current Shutra.

However, In-gong chose something completely different.

"Teach me Divine Beast Authority."

"Shutra?"

Caitlin was shocked.

It was receiving. It was a powerful technique passed down through the royal family of the lycanthropes.

Even among the lycanthropes, only the royal family and the people closest to them

could learn it. Therefore, it was a very symbolic technique.

How could they teach such a technique to In-gong?

‘Anyway, I have to go forward with Chris and Caitlin.’

There were three major factions in the Demon King’s Palace.

First Prince Baikal Ragnaros’ faction, Second Prince Zephyr Ragnaros’ faction and Fourth Princess Anastasia Nekrion’s faction.

Of course, he couldn’t enter Zephyr’s faction. Baikal’s faction was impossible because the gandharva were enemies with his mother’s family. The only possible one was Anastasia’s faction but it wasn’t an exaggeration to say that she was a woman as bad as Zephyr.

‘I’d rather create my own faction.’

In that sense, Chris and Caitlin were quite decent selections.

Caitlin’s birth secret could be called their biggest weakness. It would be good if he could somehow control that part.

Furthermore, today, Caitlin’s attitude in the dwarf cave had moved In-gong’s heart. Caitlin was a reliable person.

It wasn’t only because of the symbolism that In-gong chose Divine Beast Authority.

‘I can get subordinates later. Weapons are too good for my current level and ability.’

However, techniques were different. Moreover, Divine Beast Authority was a S ranked martial arts technique.

Inside Knight Saga, SS ranked martial arts and sword techniques were undisputedly recognized. S ranked techniques were virtually top class and Zephyr’s Heavenly King Sword was in this category.

That alone gave it value.

Chris stared at In-gong seriously before laughing. He shrugged slightly and said,

"Divine Beast Authority. Yes, it isn't too bad. Up to a certain level, it is easy to disguise it as Beast Authority."

Beast Authority - it was a martial arts technique that lycanthropes learnt if they entered the army.

In-gong knew what it meant to be taught the Divine Beast Authority. From the outset, it was something that he had never learnt.

"As of now... I can't teach past the vision section. Is that still okay?"

"It is okay."

He could find clues to learn it later. Even if he didn't know, he could learn it by increasing the skill level. The important thing was to learn Divine Beast Authority Lv1.

"Okay, this is interesting. Interesting. Just like Aura, Caitlin and I will teach you."

Chris glanced towards Caitlin while speaking and she nodded with a somewhat ambiguous expression. It seemed like she was somewhat confused.

"Shutra."

Chris reached out like he wanted to shake hands with In-gong. There was a mischievous smile on his face but his eyes contained a different light.

"In addition to Caitlin, can I also think about you as my younger sibling?"

The words were quite meaningful.

In-gong breathed out once and grabbed Chris' hand. He shook it lightly.

"Of course."

Then a clear voice rang in his head.

[An alliance with Chris Moonlight/Caitlin Moonlight has been formed.]  
[Alliance Status: An ordinary alliance.]

In-gong grinned as he grabbed the hands in front of him.



# Chapter 18

## Rescue

[Name: Shutra Ignus]

[Age: 14]

[Level: 9]

[Species: Gandharva]

[Occupation: Protagonist]

[Secondary Occupation: Conquest Knight Lv1]

[Uniqueness: Prince/ Conquest Knight]

Strength: 21

Intelligence: 21

Agility: 21

Talent: 21

Persistence: 21

Durability: 21

Mental Power: 21

Magic Power: 21

Charm: 17

Extra Points: 14

“Hrmm.”

In-gong nodded slowly as he observed the status window floating in the air. There was only one stat that stood out just based on the difference in numbers.

‘Charm.’

In Knight Saga, Charm had been different from appearance. Appearance meant the extent in which a person was called handsome or pretty, while Charm meant how much a person liked the character.

It could refer to someone who gave off a good feeling for no reason, a person who looked strangely handsome despite being ordinary or a person who was beautiful but poisonous.

In contrast, there were the handsome or pretty people who repulsed anyone who came near them.

Shutra's appearance was seven out of ten points, so he was really handsome. Moreover, now that his Charm was higher than Villager A, there was no damage to his good looks.

The thing In-gong focused on was that his Charm was lower than the other stats.

'The extent to which my stats have risen has changed.'

At first, every level up caused his stats to rise by two. However, now Charm only rose by one.

'Of course, the reason is obvious.'

Characters in Knight Saga grew individually. At first, a character wouldn't rise well in the early stages. However, they would start showing peculiar abilities once their levels got higher. Genius characters such as Locke and Zephyr showed good growth from beginning to end.

Even so, all of his stats rose by two except for Charm, so his overall growth rate was better than Locke and Zephyr. There were also his additional points.

'As expected of a protagonist.'

In-gong mumbled and grinned as he checked the skills window.

He hadn't distributed the skill points gained from reaching level nine, so there weren't many changes.

'Kuhuhuh, this is the result of my hard work.'

He returned to his tent after forming an alliance with Caitlin and Chris but he didn't

go to sleep straight away. He spent three hours gaining experience.

He wrote dwarf characters on a blank piece of paper while practicing Telekinesis with his other hand.

Additionally, he memorized vocabulary. He didn't just memorize the dwarf characters but fit the dwarf characters to his favourite song lyrics.

His skill level improved considerably due to the translations and repetitive writing. However, the level was still low. If he repeated it for six more hours, it could reach level two.

Telekinesis training was simpler. He practiced moving small things he placed on his desk. Telekinesis shook the object instead of moving it because it was still too weak but at least it worked.

'Yes, I should make Telekinesis reach level two through hard work. A lot of hard work is required to become an all-rounder. It won't always be good.'

However, he still wanted to learn magic. Recovery magic was indispensable, so he couldn't forget about it.

'It is better than nothing, even if I only learn it to Lv1.'

After having these thoughts, In-gong looked at the skills that had no change.

Conquest, Below the King's Flag and Protagonist Correction.

They were still Lv1, so the proficiency hadn't changed but In-gong didn't mind. He hadn't experimented with them yet.

'I am anticipating level 10.'

Apart from skill points distribution and hard work with general skills, there was one other way for skill levels to increase.

In most cases, the skill level rose automatically when the character level reached a certain number.

Level 10 - wasn't it always a meaningful level?

It had been the same for Knight Saga. When Zephyr and Locke reached level 10, their unique skills 'Descendant of Darkness' and 'Chosen' rose by one level.

"Either Conquest or Protagonist Correction will rise in level. I'll bet on it. I will. Isn't that right?"

In-gong muttered and closed the status window. He wanted to go hunting to level up straight away but he had a lot of work to do today and tomorrow.

"Prince, I am coming in."

He heard Carack's voice from where he was waiting outside the tent.

"Come in."

It was early in the morning but Carack was fully armed. He held a round shield that he didn't usually have and asked In-gong,

"What are you doing?"

"Just training my body. Are we leaving now?"

"Prince understands, so you need to move quickly. This time, Prince Chris will accompany us.

The operation was to quickly secure and confirm information. They had to check if the dwarf portal really worked and to secure the rear of the Red Lightning tribe as quickly as possible.

If all the work was done today, they could attack tomorrow or the day after.

"Okay, let's go."

Despite it being early in the morning, In-gong responded with delight and left the tent.

Caitlin's base was quite busy. Chris and Caitlin greeted In-gong at the entrance to the base, with Caitlin's lycanthrope warriors lined up behind them.

“Shutra.”

Caitlin welcomed In-gong with pleasure. The two people felt strangely more intimate due to the creation of the alliance last night.

It would be nice if I could see their favorability toward me.’

Unfortunately, there was no direct way to see that. In Knight Saga, a character’s favorability could only be checked using special items or special NPCs.

There were cases when a ‘loyal’ character would suddenly commit an act of betrayal.

Chris placed an arm around In-gong’s shoulder and said familiarly,

"Lunch is packed, so let’s eat at the cave. Hurry.”

His expression was like a child going on a picnic. Caitlin sighed then explained to In-gong,

"While we check the portal, my soldiers plan to clean up all the monsters in the cave. Seira will take command.”

Caitlin pointed toward Seira while In-gong remained silent.

'Well, it is unreasonable to level up using the monsters in the cave.’

He felt regretful but it couldn’t be helped. Securing the dwarf portal and the passage needed to be done at the same time.

Chris squeezed his arm.

"The discovery of the cave and portal is all yours, so you can expect a huge reward. If this is finished well, won’t your life in the Demon King’s Palace become completely different? The eyes of the other Demon King’s children will also change.”

His ‘Hyung’ expressed a subtle sense of hostility when he said the words ‘Demon King’s children.’

‘Rewards are nice but I don’t want to stand out.’

It was the same as attracting Zephyr’s attention. Even so, there was nothing he could do if Shutra kept remaining weak. He had to take some risks.

‘Well, I was already at the very bottom, so maybe this might be a good thing?’

It was highly likely he would be talked about.

Furthermore, he shouldn’t be afraid to be noticed from the start. He didn’t form an alliance with Chris and Caitlin for the sake of hiding.

While In-gong’s thoughts became a little dark, Chris tapped on In-gong’s back. He seemed to be misunderstanding In-gong’s thoughts.

“Hey, don’t worry. You will soon be taught Divine Beast Authority. Your aura isn’t developed enough so special medication is needed. It will take some time to prepare the ingredients.”

"I will be sure to teach you Aura properly. There will be some time after this operation."

Caitlin also jumped in.

There were so many things he decided to learn that there didn’t seem to be enough time.

In-gong stared at Caitlin and inwardly laughed.

‘Divine Beast Authority and Aura is good, but I want to get some magic...wait.’

In-gong made a confused sound. Something flashed through his head.

‘Do I really need to be hit by magic?’

So far, he had learnt two skills through two method.

One method to acquire the skill was to do the related actions.

Basic Swordsmanship, Map Reading, Dwarf Characters and so on belonged here.

The other method was being hit by the skill.

It was impossible to learn Aura and Telekinesis through doing the related actions. Moreover, both skills required awakening.

Magic.

It was necessary to awaken magic power. However, the process of learning magic was closer to the former learning type than the latter.

'Should I ask for some magic books? A basic spellbook or a collection of circle one magic.'

Caitlin and Chris were powerful warriors and magicians. Although they leaned more towards being warriors, they ought to have a few spellbooks.

At that moment, another thought popped up.

Magician, Prince and Princess = their occupation and status in the Demon World meant they would know many things.

"Chris hyung, I have a question."

"Huh? What is it?"

Chris, who was walking alongside In-gong, glanced over with a friendly expression. Caitlin's beautiful eyes also blinked at him.

In-gong asked both of them in a slightly lowered voice,

"Have you ever heard of something called Conquest Knight?"

# Chapter 19

## Rescue #2

Conquest Knight.

The woman with pure white hair wearing a golden crown.

In-gong wanted to learn more about a Conquest Knight and its skills.

'Punishment, obedience, governance.'

Weren't those words related to conquest?

Protagonist Correction might be the cause but he was more focused on the Conquest side.

Prince, Conquest Knight.

An occupation and skills that hadn't appeared in Knight Saga. Did Chris and Caitlin know about it?

Both Chris and Caitlin thought about it instead of answering In-gong directly. However, that was only for a moment. Chris shook his head.

"I don't know, I've never heard of it. Caitlin, do you know?"

Caitlin's response was a little more sincere than Chris' but the result wasn't different. Just like Chris, she shook her head.

"I don't know. Is that a nickname for someone? Is it a warrior on your side?"

Conquest Knight. They never heard of it. It was quite interesting.

Even Chris, who liked stories of warriors, didn't know?



Chris clapped his hands.

"Yes, there is a possibility. Shutra, do you have a warrior called a Conquest Knight? I would like a knight like that."

His eyes lit up at the story. In-gong laughed awkwardly and waved his hands.

"No, it is the same for me. I just remembered hearing it from somewhere."

It was pretty dangerous when he thought about it.

In-gong didn't know what a Conquest Knight was yet. In other words, it meant that other people could be Conquest Knights.

What if Conquest Knights were a danger to Chris and Caitlin?

'Caitlin and Chris...'

No, even Caitlin might want to harm him.

'I was too hasty. I shouldn't have mentioned it.'

He needed to find out as much as possible about Conquest Knights by himself. In-gong realized that he shouldn't talk about Conquest Knights.

'The risk is too much.'

In-gong controlled his mind and concentrated on the front again.

'It isn't all smoke and water... If Chris and Caitlin don't know, should I go to the library?'

It wasn't an entirely new thought but he went back to it after not finding any clues. There might be a record there.

'In the end, it is just a feeling.'

No, was it really a feeling?

The white woman with a golden crown. The red flame-like woman. The skinny man

dressed in a black robe and the blue man wearing a skull helmet.

The appearances of the four people became a blur in his head. In-gong felt dizzy.

"Hey, are you okay? Are you not feeling well?"

Chris, who had been walking ahead, looked back. He called out with surprise as In-gong's eyes rolled back and he stumbled.

"Hey?"

"Ah, it is nothing. I'm still a bit sleepy."

In-gong rubbed his eyes like he was sleepy and gave a small yawn. Chris made a 'hah' sound and turned back to the front.

"Aigoo, you are still a kid. You should have been mentally prepared from the moment the operation started."

He was saying insults but his eyes were smiling. In-gong had thought so since they first met, but Chris was just like a nice neighbourhood hyung.

"Do you want water?"

Caitlin extended a canteen from where she was walking next to him. She was making the same expression as Chris.

"Thank you."

In-gong wasn't particularly thirsty but he took the canteen and took a sip. Throughout the past few days, she had been acting like a really friendly noona.

Although In-gong had only met them for a few days, he could tell how close they were to each other. It was understandable since Chris and Caitlin were lycanthropes.

'It will be a nightmare if one of them dies.'

When Caitlin died, Chris would go wild. If Chris died, then Caitlin would go on a rampage. That's why they were called blood-crazed beasts.

In-gong handed the canteen back to Caitlin and looked to the front, where he saw Chris staring back at them. Chris just smiled before turning away again.

In-gong had a sudden thought.

‘Does Chris know?’

Did he know that Caitlin wasn’t the child of the Demon King? That her father was Gallehed, one of the five captains?

There was barely a two year difference between Chris and Caitlin. Chris had only been a baby when Caitlin was born.

However, Chris was part of the lycanthropes’ royal family. As the son of the 4th Queen Elaine Moonlight and the Demon King, he had grown up to become king of the lycanthropes.

It was difficult to imagine that he didn’t know about Caitlin, the lycanthropes’ greatest weakness.

‘And...’

In-gong glanced towards Caitlin. She kept walking forward as she responded affectionately to In-gong’s gaze.

“What? Do you want more water?”

"No, I am fine."

In-gong looked ahead again.

Caitlin Moonlight. A year before the Day of Massacre, she would be the starting point for a huge civil war among the children of the Demon King.

Did she even know? The fact that she wasn’t the child of the Demon King?

‘I have to slowly find out.’

In-gong stepped forward. The cave wasn't far.

They had already walked on this path once, so the party's marching speed was fast.

Once they reached the part of the cave where the rock spiders came out, Seira and her lycanthropes split into three passages while Carack and Chris' elite troops entered another with In-gong, Chris and Caitlin following behind.

Upon arriving at the dwarf portal, the lycanthrope magicians Chris brought started to examine the portal. They seemed to roughly know the dwarf language.

"Shutra, I'm not doubting you. I just need to confirm it. Isn't this type of procedure necessary?"

Chris laughed as he spoke towards In-gong. No matter how much he believed in In-gong, it was a necessary procedure. There was a possibility that In-gong's interpretation was wrong.

"It's okay. I already guessed that."

In-gong replied while observing the magicians. Due to the fact that they were lycanthropes, the magicians were all muscular.

The mysterious magicians decrypted the dwarf characters and spoke to Chris.

"Prince Chris, it is just like Prince Shutra said. This portal is connected to the Eska branch of the Jishuka Mountains."

"Will the portal work normally?"

The magicians pointed to the magic spell underneath the characters and replied to Chris.

"It seems to work. Dwarven goods are unbeatable."

Dwarf-made objects were masterpieces in the Demon World. Chris nodded and looked at In-gong and Caitlin.

"Okay, let's move."

Moving through the portal was simple. Once the magician inserted magic power into the circle, a blue and round gate appeared. After passing through it, they arrived in front of the other portal.

"How is it? It isn't anything special right?"

Caitlin laughed and patted his shoulder. In-gong nodded with surprise.

"Yes, it wasn't anything special."

He had been worried about what would happen once he entered the blue gate but he didn't feel anything.

'Isn't this called a space jump?'

It was space movement, not a space jump. At first glance, it seemed the same. However, there was a big difference.

Of course, In-gong had no way of knowing what the difference was. He didn't know much about it.

"Stay alert. The passages haven't been secured yet. Don't forget that we still don't know where the passage exit leads to."

Chris started to explore the passage ahead with the lycanthropes. It was completely different from the relaxed figure he showed at the base.

'Yes, he is this type of person.'

Caitlin also stayed silent with a serious expression after hearing Chris' words. He looked back and Carack had a strict and serious expression on his face as well.

Fortunately, the passage with Portal Three was much shorter compared to the one with Portal Two.

In-gong used the mini-map and found a door that Carack cracked open.

"Phew, I feel better now."

Fresh air flooded in from the open door. It was a windy area.

"A mountain slope? Okay, let's examine it."

Chris muttered and gave a signal. The lycanthropes immediately left the cave at a swift pace.

"We are going. Be careful."

This time, Chris moved in the front, followed by In-gong, Caitlin and Carack.

Chris covered up the entrance of the cave with rocks, dead tree branches and grass so that it was almost invisible.

"Okay, this looks good."

Chris said while looking down the mountain. Without realising it, In-gong exclaimed with admiration,

"Wow!"

The Red Lightning tribe was spread out under the mountain. If he included the non-combatants, there were more than 5,000 people, so it was incomparable to Caitlin's base.

"The food warehouses are a priority when attacking from the rear. While Vandal strikes from the front, a unit will infiltrate the rear to burn the food warehouses."

Chris said while pointing to a corner. His voice sounded quite sinister.

However, Caitlin, who was looking at the entire base, shook her head.

"It is strange. There aren't that many troops."

"Eh? Come to think of it?"

It wasn't night yet but there were very few orcs at the base.

Chris, Caitlin and In-gong looked into the distance. Their mouths dropped open at the same time.

At the plains in front of the base...

Two different armies were clashing.

# Chapter 20

## Rescue #3

There was fighting. It was clear a fight was taking place but it was too far away to find out more.

There was a wide plain in front of the Red Lightning tribe's base with the Jishuka Mountains acting as a barrier in the rear. A battle was taking place in one corner of the plain.

"I can't see it! What about both of you?"

He looked on either side of him and asked. He knew the answer without both of them saying anything. Even though it was so far away, the combat scene was visible to them.

"Prince, I can't see it either."

Carack's answer was meaningless.

Caitlin spoke while still observing the battlefield.

"Shutra, focus your aura on your eyes."

Aura was life force used to strengthen the body but focusing Aura on the eyes?

'Heok, it is real. I can see it!'

Once Aura was gathered to his eyes, he could see further and more accurately. Things that had looked like dots started to gradually take shape to In-gong.

"Orcs...what? They aren't orcs or ogres?"

Not only the skin colour but also the clothing was completely different from orcs and ogres. Orcs and ogres generally favoured less clothing due to their large size. However, the people fighting now wore black or purple clothes and were slim.



'Ugh, is this my limit?'

He tried to focus his aura a little bit more but nothing really changed. From the start, the distance had simply been too far.

Chris' and Caitlin's expressions showed they also couldn't get clear answers. Chris, who seemed to be using a lot of power on his eyes, frowned and muttered.

"They aren't General Vandal's forces. In the first place, there was no battle planned today. The size of the troops fighting is also too small."

Of course, not all battles went as scheduled. However, this wasn't General Vandal's base but the front of the Red Lightning tribe. There was no reason for there to be a fight outside of the schedule.

They weren't General Vandal's troops but a third army.

As Chris had said, the scale was too small. There seemed to be only approximately 100 people. The conflict had turned into a one-sided fight as the difference in troops was too large.

"It is too reckless. They are going to be wiped out!"

Caitlin shouted. In-gong also saw it. They had to flee now while the siege net wasn't complete.

However, the movements of the troop was strange. Rather than try to escape, they were rushing desperately through the orcs.

'What the? Was something important taken from them?'

"Retreating."

Chris said. The movements of the troop changed when the fiercest fighting at the forefront collapsed. It seemed like the commander who led the reckless battle had fallen.

The retreat of the unidentified army was swift. From the outset, they seemed to have

excellent maneuverability. They quickly opened a wide distance between them and the orcs on the plains.

"The big fight is over? Who the hell was fighting?"

Carack asked with a frustrated frown on his face. Chris ignored him while Caitlin turned to Carack with a face that said she didn't know.

In-gong breathed out. He couldn't see everything but he used a few context clues to come to a rough answer.

Black or purple clothes. Rapid maneuverability. They weren't General Vandal's forces. The most crucial point was that the unidentified army was riding on a horned lizard.

'Dark elf.'

Corrupted elves in the Demon World.

It was obvious.

Just like dwarves and orcs, the dark elves in Knight Saga were similar to the universal dark elves in fantasy.

Their ears were long, they had thin limbs and their movements were light and agile.

Their skin colour was brown or copper, reminiscent of a South American beauty. Both male and female dark elves enjoyed wearing exposed clothes and the dark elves resided in the Great Forest that could be called the Demon World's Amazon.

They were corrupted but still elves. Magic was the reason for their corruption in the first place, so they were excellent at using magic.

They rode on lizards called dracos that also lived in the Great Forest. In terms of endurance, they were inferior to horses. However, their instant speed was tremendous and they had tactical value in swamps.

'Why did the dark elves come here?'

There was a colossal distance between the Great Forest and Jishuka Mountains. Of

course, the dark elves didn't always stay in the Great Forest but it didn't make sense for them to jump into the Jishuka Mountains so fiercely.

"Prince? Have you figured something out?"

Carack recognized when In-gong was thinking and asked urgently. Chris and Caitlin then looked at In-gong with anticipation.

"What is it? Have you found something?"

A light shone in Chris and Caitlin's eyes. It was like they were preparing to shout out, 'Great!'.

In-gong scratched his head and muttered,

"I'm not sure but... they seem like dark elves. Does Hyung and Noona see what they are riding on? There are horns on their heads and don't they move really fast?"

Carack was still confused but Chris and Caitlin were different. The two of them shouted almost simultaneously,

"Draco!"

No further explanation was needed. Of course, Carack required it but no one was kind enough to explain it to him.

"I almost missed the obvious."

"Those creatures are dracos. It is my first time seeing them."

Chris and Caitlin said separately. Carack's eyes widened as he finally grasped the situation.

"Dracos? Then they are dark elves?"

"It is just a possibility. The battle was too far away, so I only guessed."

In fact, In-gong had never actually seen the dracos.

‘They were too far away, so I just guessed based on the horns on the head.’

In fact, there were many animals with horns on their heads in the Demon World. If it hadn’t been for their explosive speed when retreating, In-gong would never have thought of a draco.

‘It is hard but rewarding to ride them.’

Of course, that had been a story in the game.

"Yes, let’s return immediately. We need to get in touch with General Vandal to figure out the situation."

He had originally intended to inform Vandal of the existence of the dwarf portal and to discuss plans but now, something more urgent had occurred.

Chris spoke to In-gong and Caitlin, then blew a little horn hanging by his throat. It made a special sound that only lycanthropes could hear.

"Let's go."

Chris moved ahead of them with the lycanthropes.

After returning to Portal Two, they headed towards Chris’ base instead of Caitlin’s.

It was his first time visiting Chris’ base but the basic form wasn’t much different from Caitlin’s base. The big difference was that Chris had twice the number of troops compared to Caitlin.

“Contact General Vandal. It is urgent.”

Chris ordered as soon as they arrived at the tents. He had contacted them in advance, so magic tools were already installed in the tent.

The lycanthrope magicians injected magic power and light started gathering on a circular silver tray that was erected vertically.

‘Ohh, video communication?’

In-gong was filled with expectation. After one or two minutes, the shape of a person appeared in the midst of the light.

“Prince Chris.”

The owner of the voice was a fierce looking ogre. There were a few long scars on the red skin of his angular face.

‘It is nice to see him.’

It felt great to see a subordinate he used to have in the game.

However, that was only In-gong. Vandal only looked at Chris and Chris talked straight away instead of introducing In-gong and Caitlin.

“General Vandal, there was a small battle in front of the Red Lightning tribe approximately an hour ago. It doesn’t seem to be the General’s army, so do you have any ideas?”

“I do. How did Prince know about it?”

Vandal responded curtly. If Carack was a genius (?) among orcs, Vandal was a genius among ogres. His words were short but his brain wasn’t comparable to an ordinary ogre.

"I saw it with my own eyes. I will tell you the story."

Chris concisely explained about the dwarf cave and portal. In the meantime, Caitlin’s oppa also stated that In-gong was the one who discovered it.

“Indeed.”

Vandal nodded with a serious expression. Caitlin stepped forward and spoke.

"General Vandal, it is now your turn. Tell us what you know."

"The ones that Prince and Princess witnessed, they are dark elves."

Vandal’s story was short and to the point.

‘Indeed.’

As expected, they were dark elves. Chris asked another question.

“Why did the dark elves suddenly appear? Are they reinforcements sent from the Demon King’s Palace?”

“It is similar but different. An independent unit intervened. They said they wanted to scout before joining.”

Something unexpected happened and they faced a large number of enemies.

"As Prince and Princess witnessed, they were smashed. However, there is something bigger. The leader of the dark elf army was caught by the Red Lightning tribe.”

Chris’ expression changed at Vandal’s words. Caitlin seemed like she had already guessed as much.

“That is why they were fighting so recklessly.”

Carack, who seemed independent from the current situation, whispered to In-gong. In-gong nodded and asked Chris and Caitlin,

"Who is the leader of the independent troop?"

“Felicia Doomblade.”

The answer came from General Vandal. No further explanation was needed for In-gong.

The 6th Princess, Felicia Doomblade.

Chris and Caitlin's half sister.

# Chapter 21

## Rescue #4

The Demon King had five queens and nine children from them.

The 3rd Queen, Sylvia Doomblade.

She was the eldest daughter of the Doomblade family, which could be called the leader of the seven dark elf clans, and was a princess of the dark elves.

Felicia Doomblade was one of two children that Sylvia Doomblade gave birth to.

'What about her brother?'

The 5th Prince, Silvan Doomblade, and the 6th Princess, Felicia Doomblade.

In-gong examined his memories of both of them. In the game, they belonged to the faction of the 4th Princess, Anastasia Nekrion - a long time rival of Zephyr. So, he always considered them as 'enemies'.

'Still, it is better than Chris and Caitlin.'

He had a lot more chances to meet the two people when he played at the Demon King's Palace.

'Haughty, pretty, selfish... just a princess.'

That was his impression of Felicia. Her brother Silvan Doomblade was more of an enemy to Zephyr, than her.

'He is certainly a fighter.'

Just like Chris and Caitlin, Silvan gave off an intense impression because he was a fierce enemy. Silvan was considered the biggest player in the Day of Massacre.

'Anyway, Felicia is here.'

Why did Felicia suddenly appear? Was she trying to intercept the merits?

'It isn't likely.'

The children of the Demon King didn't move only on missions. Those who were over 18 years old could travel independently to manage various things but Felicia was only turning 18 this year.

'Perhaps, she is performing another mission in the area?'

The conversation between Vandal and Chris continued while In-gong was making such a reasoning. Chris frowned.

"Does the Red Lightning tribe know that she is Felicia?"

"I don't know. She might have said it or kept her mouth shut. Or maybe the orcs figured it out."

There was a huge gap between thinking of Felicia as a dark elf officer and a princess. It was obvious that her treatment would vary depending on what they thought she was.

'Maybe she is already dead.'

She could be used as political ransom, however, her captors were the aggressive orcs. Moreover, there were considerable differences between the way the Human World and the Demon World thought.

"So, what is the castle's policy?"

"Save her if possible."

"There are to be no negotiations?"

"If they call out first, I will try to talk about it. However, I don't think they will initiate contact."



“Indeed.”

Chris laughed bitterly while In-gong nodded.

This wasn't just a story created by the ogre, Vandal.

The common law in the Demon World was that the strong ruled. There was no reason to desperately rescue a princess captured by the enemy.

‘Well, that is only the common law of the Demon King’s Palace.’

The dark elves didn't think of retreating despite risking death.

‘No, was it because they thought this was their only chance to save her?’

Either way, the fact remained that the Demon King’s Palace wouldn't care about rescuing a prince or princess.

"I will gather more information from this side."

Vandal soon said. His words were somewhat rude but Chris nodded without any complaints.

"Okay, then let's talk again in a few hours."

Chris gestured and the magicians in charge of the communication magic left the tent.

In-gong glanced to Carack and ordered,

"Carack, you should leave as well."

"I understand. Call me if necessary."

Now, there were only three people left in the tent, In-gong, Chris and Caitlin. Chris gave a long sigh and flopped down in his chair.

"Our good sister is a prisoner."

There were thorns in his words. Caitlin looked between In-gong and Chris and

declared.

"If she is still alive then we have to save her."

It was a pretty decisive attitude. Caitlin had such a firm will on her face that In-gong nodded inadvertently.

However, Chris was a little different. He stared at Caitlin and laughed.

"Yes, that would be good but don't forget that one method is to not save her."

Caitlin looked at Chris. He just ignored her gaze and shrugged.

"It is a joke."

'Is he really not serious?'

His expression and eyes seemed completely different.

'It is bloody.'

It was natural that the relationship between the children of the Demon King wouldn't be good. They were busy fighting each other every day.

However, sibling were siblings. Even though their relationships were bad, it wasn't extreme enough to kill each other.

'That died in earnest after the lycanthrope war.'

In fact, it was initiated by Zephyr. Zephyr was the one who created such a sense of crisis that they had to act.

However, Chris just implied that it didn't matter if Felicia died.

'Did something happen between the two of them?'

He didn't know the specifics but it seemed bad..

'If Chris and Caitlin survived, then it is likely that they would be the ones handling

Silvan and Felicia... Eh, will he really let her die?’

Moreover, would Felicia actually die ? Right now, it was Year 512. In the beginning of Knight Sage, Year 513, Felicia was still alive.

‘No, I can’t be sure.’

There was no guarantee that it would go like it had in the game. Right now, the relationship between Shutra, Chris and Caitlin hadn’t changed anything drastically.

"We should save her. No, we have to save Unni."

(Honorific used by females towards older females)

Caitlin stared straight at Chris and declared. Just like how Chris seemed serious, Caitlin was also sincere.

‘As expected.’

While In-gong remained silent, Chris sighed and nodded.

"Well, yes. We have to at least give it a try."

Caitlin’s eyes shook but she didn’t say anything more. In-gong, who was sandwiched between them, asked.

"Is there a method?"

Currently, it was unknown if Felicia was alive or not. If the Red Lightning tribe had kidnapped her, they didn’t know where she was imprisoned.

Chris shrugged and replied.

"Well, it isn’t good to drag out the time... General Vandal will probably have a method.’

Chris rose from his seat and pointed to the battlefield map spread on the table.

"After General Vandal’s troops attack from the front, from behind..."

Chris set up three models behind the Red Lightning tribe.

"You and Caitlin, the three of us will hit the rear of the enemy. While I hope we can rescue Felicia in the middle of this... there is a chance we can't. Will that be our fault?"

Chris' gaze turned toward Caitlin. She tightened her lips and said,

"If you rescue Felicia unni, it will be a really big merit."

"Yes, that is true. She will also be indebted to me. Well, isn't this pretty good?"

Chris nodded with a sly smile. Caitlin was at a loss for words while In-gong didn't say anything.

'Would he have treated Shutra like this if he didn't like me?'

He didn't know about Caitlin but Chris seemed to be like that.

Chris, who was laughing alone, knocked on the table.

"Hopefully, we can proceed early in the morning. Then, we should go to our separate bases and rest. General Vandal and I will discuss the details."

"Oppa should rest too."

"Yes."

Caitlin looked reluctantly at Chris one more time before leaving the tent with In-gong.

It was evening when Chris called In-gong and Caitlin again.

"The operation is simple."

Chris laid some models on the battlefield map. He was able to tell with one glance what the models meant.

'The three of us are have character miniature models.'

The models were quite well made. Chris then started to talk.

"While General Vandal lures the Red Lightning tribe, we will strike them in the back."

'It is really simple.'

It was almost the same story he heard during the day. While In-gong stared at the map, Chris coughed and added,

"I will move into the center of the base and make as much fuss as possible. Then Caitlin and Shutra will lead their respective troops to break in and carry out the mission."

The three models scattered in different directions. In-gong asked,

"The mission, are you referring to the rescue of Felicia noona?"

"Burn the food warehouses and save Felicia in the middle if you find her. If it gets dangerous, leave."

It wasn't a rescue mission but a destructive one.

"Oppa."

"I've done everything I can. Is there anything else we can do?"

Caitlin made a disgusted expression at Chris' words but didn't say anything.

'No, he could send spies to check the location of the prisoner. Well... that is only if there is enough time.'

In-gong thought inwardly as he continued to listen to Chris' explanation. Various matters about the operation needed to be discussed, including signals between the units.

"Okay, go back and relax. We will start at midnight. Let's do it right."

'Yes, I'll try to get to level 10 this time.'

In-gong nodded and left the tent.

Time passed quickly. Along with Carack and his 50 orcs, Chris and Caitlin's units passed through the dwarf portal and stood on the mountain overlooking the Red Lightning tribe.

"Heh, they would never think we were behind them."

Carack murmured in a small voice like he found it hilarious. Nearly 400 troops were hiding. However, the night was so deep and the moon barely was shining, so In-gong couldn't see everyone.

In-gong nodded as he stared in front of him. He stood in the cold night air and gazed into the distance.

"It is starting."

A low roar was heard from the front as soon as he spoke. The ground shook as Vandal's troops rushed forward and there was the sound of various musical instruments, such as horns and drums.

There was a frenzy at the Red Lightning base below. Shouting and horns sounded at the same time as soldiers poured out of the tents.

In-gong gazed in the direction where Chris was hiding. Chris made a signal to wait as soon as In-gong turned to look at him.

"Now?"

"Wait. We have to wait until enough troops have left."

In-gong explained to Carack and calmed his heart. He had experienced combat several times but his heartbeat got faster because this was the first time he would be in such a big battle.

Some time passed.

Chris and the lycanthropes started moving down. It was a really fast pace.

In-gong kept waiting. There needed to be a time difference with Chris' troops. This

time In-gong was leading 50 orcs and an additional 30 orcs given by Chris. There was a total of 80 orcs.

As the lycanthropes roared, there was another big fuss at the base of the Red Lightning tribe. Now was the time.

"Charge!"

"Charge!"

Along with In-gong, Carack shouted loudly and the orcs ran down the mountain. The shouting was over after they reached the enemy's location.

Thanks to Internal Strength, In-gong was able to keep up with the orcs. In-gong peered around while running and saw Caitlin, who was deliberately coinciding her speed to match In-gong's troops.

Just like Chris did, Caitlin looked back at In-gong. Caitlin laughed and In-gong grinned back.

The base was right in front of him. In-gong kept an eye on both the mini-map and the area in front of him as he raised his sword.

Author's Note:

That... In response to the 'half sister' in yesterday's chapter, I just used that term as a way of indicating that Felicia is a child of the Demon King.

-All children of the Demon King are half-siblings. Caitlin is officially a child of the Demon King, so she has a half-sibling relationship with the other children.

Since there is a possibility of unnecessary confusion due to an inaccuracy of the expression, I will correct it if I can think of an appropriate sentence.

-A child of the Demon King or... Maybe just Chris' half sister...

Felicia will surely appear in the next chapter!

# Chapter 22

## Rescue #5

The base of the Red Lightning tribe was a crucible of turmoil.

Flames were everywhere and the screaming, crying, roaring and shouting mixed together to create a terrible sound.

Just standing still caused his head to become dizzy, but there was no time to stop. In-gong gazed at the minimized mini-map and commanded.

"Go to the left! Run straight to the food warehouses!"

Since General Vandal had hit the front, there were few troops left in the base. Moreover, Chris had rushed forward and made a lot of fuss, so the remaining forces had flocked to Chris.

Even though it wasn't deserted, it was close to it!

"Ohhh!"

"Die!"

The orcs were fighting while rushing forward and the sight of blood filled his eyes.

Carack was showing an incredible display once again. He held an axe in one hand and a big shield in the other. As the lead orc, he crushed everything in his path.

In-gong didn't stay still. He wasn't fighting side-by-side with Carack, but he played a big role from behind Carack.

[Dagger Throwing Lv1.]

It was a skill he learnt yesterday specifically for today.



It was just throwing a knife, but he managed to kill some orcs with it. Carack dealt most of the damage but he still received a decent amount of experience.

‘Should I learn proper archery?’

A bow or other long-ranged weapons were useful in a situation like this.

“Carack! Pull to the left! Just a little bit more and we’ll arrive at a food warehouse!”

“Ouh!”

Adrenaline was being secreted as Carack responded with a strange sound. In-gong fingered his dagger and glanced around. It wasn’t because In-gong was worried about Caitlin.

‘Okay, the operation... Ah, right! Felicia!’

In-gong searched around but didn’t see any signs of Felicia.

‘If she is locked up, won’t she die because of this?’

Flames were sweeping all over the place. If she was trapped in a confined space, she might suffocate and die.

‘Does he really have no idea?’

It was Chris who rushed forward and caused the fire first. Instead of setting the fire, In-gong commanded Carack.

"Find Felicia!"

“Huh? What are you saying?”

Carack retorted with agitation. In-gong could see tents and timber buildings, but it was too crowded.

"No, just rush it!"

If the enemies knew Felicia's value, they would try to get her out.

'Yes, let's not think about it!'

In-gong felt a little sorry for Felicia but he couldn't make a difference. Instead, he focused on the mini-map while rushing forward with Carack. In-gong perceived Felicia as a neutral NPC, so she should appear as a blue or purple dot on the map.

Even Chris and Caitlin, who he killed as Zephyr, were now solid allies. Perhaps, Felicia and Silvan could become like them.

'Yes, there are no unconditional enemies!'

Of course, Zephyr was an exception!

"Prince! The food warehouses!"

Carack shouted. A few orcs around him threw flasks of explosive magic, causing a huge explosion and flames to ensue.

"Kuahaha! Good ride!"

Carack shouted like a villain with a menacing face. Instead of responding, In-gong looked around again. His first objective of the food warehouse had been taken care of, so now he could find Felicia.

'Although it is possible to find her...'

"This way! Somebody help!"

A sharp scream was heard before he finished his thought. The voice of a woman could clearly be distinguished from the sounds of the orcs.

In-gong and Carack ran towards the direction where he heard the sound. Inside a semi-collapsed wooden building, a few orcs from the Red Lightning tribe were knocked out while a female dark elf with both hands tied stood in the middle of burning wreckage.

"Felicia?"

Felicia had a sharp face, silver hair, red eyes and was wearing clothes that could be called a bathing suit.

Felicia blinked with amazement at In-gong's call.

"What, are you Shutra?"

In-gong replied with a question instead of answering.

"How? Who knocked out all the orcs?"

"Of course, I did it! I used this uproar to try and escape but the fires are everywhere... That doesn't matter! Cut this rope as quickly as possible! There is a trick involved with it that is interfering with my magic!"

Despite that, she had already halfway escaped by herself.

'As expected from a Demon King's child.'

In-gong looked at Carak while cutting Felicia's rope and Carack sent a signal into the sky. A green flash crossed with a red flame in the night sky.

"That is a signal that I found Noona! Now, let's go!"

In-gong gestured for her to come out quickly. However, Felicia was standing still with a confused face.

"Are you sending a signal to Chris and Caitlin?"

"Yes! Both of them are also looking for Noona!"

Chris said he didn't care if she died.

'I will use this opportunity to make some points. If Felicia joins our faction, Silva will also come to our side!'

Furthermore, Caitlin was sincerely worried about her.

In-gong gestured to Felicia but she kept on blinking with shock.

“Chris and Caitlin? They are trying to save me?”

‘What, is it that shocking? Is their relationship worse than I thought?’

However, it was subtle. There seemed to be a lot that In-gong still didn’t know.

‘Ah, I don’t know. Let’s get out of here first!’

Now wasn’t the time to be thinking about this. They needed to move.

"Prince! Those guys are coming!"

Carack cried out loudly. In-gong glanced at the mini-map and saw many red dots flocking.

‘It is natural after the food warehouses are burnt.’

Perhaps the enemy had already noticed the main purpose of In-gong’s troops. Of course, the food warehouse was burning, so things were going smoothly.

“Noona! Come on! Hurry!”

“U-understood! But calling me Noona...”

Felicia started moving while replying to him.

"Kill them!"

"Turn those fellows into soup!"

The Red Lightning tribe orcs were rushing towards them. Arrows flew from every direction and the sound of axes could be heard.

"Kuk! Hide behind me!"

Carack placed a shield over his head and covered In-gong. In-gong reached out quickly, grabbed Felicia’s wrist and pulled her along.

“Kyak?”

"Ohhh!"

“Kill!”

"Fight!"

The yells of the orcs swallowed up Felicia’s scream. Carack raised his shield and shouted.

"Prince! Stick closely behind me!"

It was a situation where he couldn’t afford to look at the mini-map. In-gong looked away from Carack and toward Felicia.

“Felicia noona! Do you have any helpful magic?”

Silvan and Felicia were capable magicians. At In-gong’s request, Felicia recovered her spirit and nodded.

“Uh, wait a minute. Then... Shutra! Behind you!”

“What?”

In-gong looked back. While the orcs of the Red Lightning tribe were rushing forward, a flame arrow was flying towards him.

‘Magic?’

There was no room to think, so In-gong acted according to instinct. He hugged Felicia to protect her and received the flame arrow.

‘Ah, damn! This isn’t Caitlin!’

It was already too late to regret it. There was terrible pain that couldn’t even be imagined.

“Shutra!”

Felicia was the one who screamed with aghast instead of In-gong. He found a single strand of pleasure in the midst of this suffering - that’s right.

[Magic Power Control Lv1 has been learnt.]

[Fire Arrow Lv1 has been learnt.]

Magic!

In-gong groaned and released Felicia. He turned around and shouted,

“Fire Arrow!”

A fire arrow made of magic!

A spark emerged from In-gong’s fingertips and flew towards the orcs.

# Chapter 23

## Rescue #6

The fire arrow broke through the darkness. Of course, everything in its path didn't turn into ashes. He had just learnt Fire Arrow, so it was only Lv1.

However, this was the first time In-gong was using magic. He felt bliss despite the pain.

'Ohh, it is real! Real magic!'

"Prince! Are you okay?"

Carack shouted without looking his way. In-gong opened his mouth to answer but only a strange sound emerged from his mouth.

"Hoatcha!"

In-gong moved his body reflexively. This time it was toward Felicia and the reason was simple.

'I-I have to do this!'

Magic was heading towards them again. It wasn't a fire arrow like earlier but an ice arrow.

"Kuheok!"

Unlike the fire arrow that exploded against In-gong's back, the ice arrow pierced through him. The clear voice rang in his head, but this time the pain was so great he couldn't feel any joy.

[Ice Arrow Lv1 has been learnt.]

[Stamina has decreased. You are in a very dangerous state.]

He couldn't see the stamina gauge but there would be a red light coming from it if he could.

"Ugh..."

As In-gong groaned and collapsed, Felicia quickly reached out and grabbed him.

"Shutra!"

"Prince! Are you okay?"

He couldn't respond to the two people. He had been too irrational when it came to magic.

He was too greedy. It was crazy to learn magic in this situation. It would be no use learning magic if he died.

In-gong had various regrets but he couldn't think due to the pain.

Felicia rolled In-gong over and pulled out the ice arrow.

"Keok!"

"Stay still!"

Felicia half-screamed as she touched In-gong's wound with trembling hands. No further attacks reached In-gong due to the fierce defense of his orcs.

"Crazy, crazy! Why did someone so weak do something like this? And when did you learn magic?"

In-gong was suffering but Felicia was very surprised. Felicia's eyes darted over In-gong's body with an incredulous expression.

'Shutra protected me?'

He took the blow with his body?

Felicia was forced to concentrate in order to cast magic. It was recovery magic for In-



gong.

‘Ah?’

A warm light emerged from Felicia’s hands and In-gong’s wounds healed quickly. It didn’t stop until his stamina recovered to a certain degree.

[Heal Lv1 has been learnt.]

‘Ohh!’

He had been about to die, so now he was just happy to be alive. Felicia didn’t realize In-gong’s joy and laid her hands on him again.

“Hey! Shutra! Steady yourself! Don’t die!”

She sounded angry but he was surprised to see tears in the corner of her eyes. In-gong, who was lying down, stared at her face with shock.

‘F-Felicia?’

She could act like this? Wasn’t she indifferent to Shutra?

“Hey, are you okay? Huh? Answer me!”

“I’m fine.”

In-gong tried to answer as energetically as possible but only a small voice emerged. Felicia started pouring out abusive language.

"This bastard! Why did you bother? Do you think that I can’t stop magic of that degree? Now, I have to protect you!”

“No, I didn’t intend to protect you.”

Of course, that was his intention with the first attack. However, he wanted to be hit the second time.

"Anyway, can you stand up? Should I use another recovery spell?"

In-gong nodded at Felicia's question and used his strength to get up. Although In-gong was confused by her overly friendly attitude, it seemed to be quite favourable to him.

"Prince! Are you okay?"

He heard Carack's voice from nearby. Instead of answering, In-gong leaned against Felicia and said,

"Noona, we need to move quickly.

Thanks to the recovery magic, his voice was better than before. Felicia nodded with relief and replied,

"Hmm, yes! Hurry!"

Somehow In-gong felt like Carack was saying 'Are you joking right now?' with his eyes, but he ignored it. He headed to the Jishuka Mountains with Felicia while Carack escorted them.

However, escaping wasn't as easy as he thought. The Red Lightning orcs were flocking like dogs.

'Damn! What is Chris doing?'

Of course, it wasn't Chris' fault. Perhaps Chris was facing double the number of orcs that In-gong was.

'Why are there so many orcs remaining at the base? Is Caitlin okay?'

In-gong was concerned about Caitlin who headed in the direction opposite to him. However, they were Chris and Caitlin. Even the powerful Zephyr was reluctant to confront them alone.

'Yes! I should just worry about myself!'

"Kuooh!"

A menacing sound was heard from the front like it was in response to In-gong's thoughts. The answer came from the orcs around him.

"Blood ogre!"

The orcs simultaneously cried out the name. An entirely red ogre blocked the path of In-gong's party.

'A mutant species of ogre!'

They had more power and were bigger than ordinary ogre.

He roared and wielded a double-edged axe that seemed to be bigger than In-gong. It was an equipment that only Zhang Fei seemed capable of using.

'We have to pierce through.'

They had to get rid of him in order to open the path to retreat. If the delay was too long, the number of Red Lightning orcs behind them would increase.

In-gong turned away from Felicia with a determined expression. Now wasn't the time to be hiding his power.

"Carack! It will be the same as last time!"

Carack nodded at In-gong's call and grabbed his axe firmly. No further explanation was required as the hearts of the two people were already connected.

"Below the King's Flag!"

In-gong stabbed a dagger into the ground and shouted. As before, a white light sprang from In-gong's body.

'Keok!'

His stamina seemed to drain out of him. Even though he was already half-seated due to stabbing the dagger into the ground, his legs lost strength and he almost collapsed.

However, the skill itself was a success. The light from In-gong gathered together to

form a line with Carack.

Carack, who was surrounded by white light, unleashed a wild battle shout. The nearby orcs roared like wolves but the magician Felicia was different. Her red eyes shook as she stared at In-gong.

"Shutra? Did you just do this right now?"

She demanded an explanation but now wasn't the time.

"I did!"

"What are you doing! Let's go!"

As Carack shouted, Felicia frowned but turned toward the blood ogre.

"Ohhhh!"

"Kuoooh!"

Carack and the blood ogre roared as they rushed towards each other. Felicia laughed like they were pathetic and waved her hands lightly.

"Grease!"

"Kaaack!"

The spell turned the ground in front of the blood ogre slippery. The blood ogre was unaware of this and fell like he had stepped on a bar of soap in the bathroom. The clever Carack didn't miss this opportunity.

"Die!"

The axe struck the blood ogre's neck.

"Kiaack!"

The blood ogre tried to raise his body with a terrible scream, but it was useless. Carack pulled the axe out and struck down on the blood ogre's forehead.

Blood and brains splattered. Carack laughed up towards the sky and Felicia frowned at him.

‘As expected from Felicia.’

Although Carack was the one who dealt the direct blow, the MVP of the battle was Felicia. She had used magic appropriate to the situation.

‘Did that mean I didn’t have to use Below the King’s Flag?’

It could be seen like that but the effect of Below the King’s Flag wasn’t simply giving strength.

[Your level has risen.]

It allowed the king to gain the merits!

‘Level 10!’

A white light shone around In-gong as he levelled up. In-gong’s stamina recovered in an instant and he jumped up. Just like last time, he had a headache after using Below the King’s Flag but he didn’t care.

Level 10 - a level with a special meaning in Knight Saga!

‘I mean, maybe!’

[The level of Protagonist Correction has increased.]

A clear voice rang out as In-gong formed a fist.

# Chapter 24

## Rescue #7

[Protagonist Correction Lv 2]

In-gong reflexively raised his hands and activated the skills window. Underneath Protagonist Correction, here was a passive skill that he hadn't seen yet .

[Battlefield Protection Lv1]

[The hit rate of weapons launched towards the protagonist is slightly lowered.]

'Heok, isn't this the stormtrooper effect?'

The effect of Protagonist Correction was like the famous stormtroopers.

Stormtroopers were elite soldiers in the classic sci-fi movie, Star Wars. Among the numerous Imperial soldiers, they were especially famous for their accurate marksmanship. However, their hit rate tended to deteriorate when encountering the party of the protagonist.

It was like how protagonists don't get shot in action movies.

'Isn't this the real Protagonist Correction?'

Perhaps his ability to learn skills wasn't an effect of Conquest but was due to Protagonist Correction.

Anyway, it was a decent skill. He was nervous because it said 'slightly', but it was currently only level one.

'Is there anything else? What effect will Protagonist Correction have when it levels up?'

“Hey! Shutra! What are you doing?”

Felicia’s sharp voice broke through In-gong’s thoughts. In-gong recovered his spirit and stood up. Right now, he was in the middle of a battle. It wasn’t the time for skills research.

‘Will I see the effect of leveling up?’

Or was it suppressed due to the effect of Below the King’s Flag?

"Prince!"

“Eh, eh!”

In-gong replied to Carack and looked around while picking up the dwarf dagger. After taking care of the blood ogre, the surprised Red Lightning tribe had changed to passive movements.

‘Okay, I should hurry.’

The mini-map was still full of enemies. After a short time, the enemies started flocking in this direction again.

"Let's go! Retreat!"

In-gong gave an order to Carack who was swinging his axe.

He also shouted towards Felicia.

“These pigs! Return them to flames!”

"Return them to flames?"

Felicia heard In-gong’s words, laughed and raised both arms.

"The wind! Stir!"

Her command soon became a reality. Strong winds burst from Felicia’s arms and caused the flames to surround the Red Lightning tribe.

“Ohh!”

It wasn't magic. In-gong was sure because he awakened magic power.

‘A spirit! It must be a spirit!’

The dark elves were elves who had been corrupted! On the Assenba Continent, there were few species born with a higher spirit affinity than elves and Felicia was a princess of the dark elves. She was a gifted spirit master before being an excellent magician.

‘But how does it happen? Just like the wind... Heok!’

In-gong shook his head. It was a long shot.

‘Spirit techniques are likely to be similar to an aura or psychic powers. I might not be able to awaken it like magic power.’

In fact, the area of magic still wasn't clear. Several more clinical experiments (?) were needed to determine the exact mechanisms.

‘But I need to be hit by a spirit technique to find out.’

He would investigate spirit techniques later.

"Prince! A flare!"

This time it was Carack who interrupted In-gong's thoughts. In-gong, who was running beside Carack, stared up at the sky and checked the signal. It was a yellow flash.

"A command to retreat!"

Chris was ordering a total retreat.

‘What is going on? Is Chris in danger?’

He suddenly thought of Caitlin. In-gong headed to the Jishuka Mountains with the orcs while navigating with the mini-map.



'I have to widen the scope around the area!'

In-gong could look at the terrain in an enclosed space, but he could only grasp the movements of the troops moving in it by expanding the scope.

Thanks to the flames being controlled by Felicia, In-gong was able to rush up the mountain. In-gong didn't forget to grasp the movements of the orcs on his side using the mini-map.

'There are approximately 60.'

It wasn't easy to figure out the exact number, but there seemed to be 60 or so orcs following him up. Once In-gong reached a certain height, he turned and looked down at the Red Lightning tribe.

Flames and smoke blocked his view but he was able to grasp the movements through the mini-map.

'There are troops in the center and on the right.'

Chris and Caitlin were in those places. Even the troops who pursued In-gong were reluctant to continue and turned towards those positions.

In-gong gritted his teeth. Chris and Caitlin popped into his head.

Blood-crazed beasts - the lycanthrope monsters.

However, that was a story that occurred in Year 516, four years from now. Chris was still 17 and Caitlin was only 15 years old.

"Caitlin."

He had to save her. No, he had to help. Perhaps the reason why In-gong could escape so easily from the enemy was because the enemy troops were all heading to Chris and Caitlin.

"Carack! Take your troops! Go and help Caitlin noona!"

If he had to help either Chris or Caitlin, it was right to choose Caitlin. Chris was much stronger than Caitlin and the lycanthropes with him were elites. He would be able to pull himself out.

"I understand!"

Carack immediately responded to In-gong's command, but Felicia was different. Her eyes widened.

"What, are you going back?"

In-gong just nodded in response and ran after Carack.

"Let's go!"

"Ouh!"

"Ohhhh!"

The adrenaline had risen in the orcs after the battle, so they roared as they followed In-gong. Felicia stared after them with a bewildered expression before cursing.

"Hey! This bastard! Go together! Let's go together!"

Instead of looking back, In-gong only checked the mini-map and ran. In no time at all, Felicia caught up to In-gong and called the spirit again.

"The wind! Open the path!"

She opened a path in the raging flames for In-gong to go through. In-gong thanked Felicia in his mind and pulled out a dagger. Red Lightning orcs could be seen in front of him.

"Carack! Pierce through!"

"Leave me alone!"

Carack laughed like a villain as he wielded the battle axe. Felicia sneered but she used magic and her spirit to block the enemy's path while securing her allies' path.

'Really skilled.'

In-gong was worried for Caitlin but his eyes were forced to go to the person next to him.

Felicia didn't use any attack magic. She used fire and wind in an appropriate manner to control the battlefield.

This was magic and this was a magician.

As she moved among the flames, she seemed like a goddess of the battlefield.

'How the hell was she caught?'

Was she captured due to a moment of carelessness? Or was there a very strong orc among the Red Lightning tribe?

"Prince! Where should we go?"

Carack asked while bathing in the enemy's blood. In-gong checked the mini-map and pointed.

"This way!"

Due to the flames, it was impossible to determine where his allies were. Therefore, he could only guess based on the movements of the enemies.

'I'm glad it is a melee.'

The enemies were running around in a confused state. If it wasn't a melee but a proper frontal battle, he would have suffered serious damage from bows and magic.

"Noona! Move those flames there!"

In-gong said while pointing to a giant blaze that was burning something unknown. Considering the circumstances, it was highly likely that Caitlin and her lycanthropes were beyond there. Piercing through was the shortest route.

"This is my command!"

Felicia shouted nervously as her hands moved.

"Tornado!"

A massive amount of mana was launched. The small winds that emerged from Felicia's fingertips became huge. It got rid of everything in its path, including the flames.

"Thank you! Noona is the best!"

In-gong cheered while Felicia huffed with frustration. However, she seemed fairly happy as he could see a small smile on her face.

"Let's go! Carack!"

"Ouh!"

In-gong ran with Carack towards the vortex and Felicia hastily got rid of it. In-gong shouted as he jumped over the scattering winds.

"Caitlin! I came to rescue...!"

Kwang!

A sudden burst swallowed all the noise, including In-gong's cries.

The bones and flesh of the orcs shattered, exploding all over the place. The source of the sound was the fist that destroyed the orcs and the owner of the fist was a young girl. She was surrounded by corpses that could barely be distinguished as orcs.

"You wanted to go and save someone?"

Felicia scoffed and Carack laughed.

In-gong looked at the girl instead of replying. Confusion flashed in the eyes of the girl covered in orc blood but that only lasted for a moment.

"Shutra! You're safe!"

Caitlin Moonlight.

Even though she was young, she still laughed like a blooming flower.

Author's Note:

I feel like addressing something

1. Half of the stories I've written so far have one heroine. The other half were n x female (usually 2 people).
2. There was a request to unify In-gong and Shutra... There is a reason for distinguishing between the two.

# Chapter 25

## Rescue #8

Caitlin wasn't alone. Behind her, the lycanthropes were breathing harshly. Just like Caitlin, they were completely covered with the blood of the orcs.

"Uh, um, save... No, I came to help you."

It was an atmosphere where he couldn't say that he came to save her.

'Should I have just left?'

The Red Lightning tribe orcs were the ones in trouble due to Caitlin and her troops.

Caitlin wiped away the blood on her face with her hands and approached In-gong. Then she noticed Carack and Felicia behind him and cried out,

"Felicia unni!"

No one could deny the pure emotions in her voice.

The cry contained a mixture of worry and joy, causing Felicia to respond with an awkward expression.

"Uh, yes. Caitlin."

She moved her head and gazed at something else. He couldn't be sure because he couldn't see her facial expression, but it seemed like she was ashamed.

Caitlin laughed brightly at the sight of Felicia and turned back to In-gong.

"Amazing. This is a huge merit."

It was definitely a big merit. Caitlin's sincere praise was also pleasing but this place wasn't very ideal. Despite being reduced, the red dots on the mini-map showed that

there were still enemies.

"Thank you. That... Noona, let's escape quickly. Chris hyung can take care of himself."

The 15 year old Caitlin was strong, but Chris was close to an adult and was more powerful. Moreover, he had more troops under his command, so there shouldn't be any problems.

Caitlin gazed in the direction where Chris was supposed to be and nodded.

"Yes, Oppa is strong."

She said with conviction, and after a long breath, she fixed her expression. Her expression was serious and somewhat cold again, just like the first time he saw her.

"Shutra, lead the way. We will take the rear."

"Understood."

After In-gong's reply, he immediately started running towards the Jishuka Mountains with Carack and the orcs. Felicia's lips tightened and she ran towards the rear with the lycanthropes instead of with In-gong. This was to secure their path of retreat by controlling the flames.

'Isn't she kind of sincere?'

She snapped whenever he asked her to do something, but grudgingly did it, so it was a little bit cute.

Fortunately, there was no threat on the way back. Part of it was due to Felicia controlling the flames, but the number of orcs in the base also seemed to be greatly reduced.

"Won't we be going over the mountains at this rate?"

Once they started climbing the mountain, Felicia joined In-gong again and asked. It was a natural question for Felicia to ask since she didn't know about the existence of the cave.

"There is a secret passage. We just need to go a little further."

Carack raised his hand and pointed to the middle of the mountain when he answered. Felicia frowned but didn't ask anymore questions.

After a few minutes. Felicia entered the secret passage and admired the portal.

"Dwarf characters? The cave and portal in the Jishuka Mountains were made by dwarves?"

Her eyes shone as she asked Caitlin. Perhaps her curiosity as a magician was triggered.

Caitlin laughed and replied,

"Shutra is the one who found this cave."

"Shutra?"

Felicia looked at In-gong with a frown and Caitlin also stared at him.

It was enjoyable to have two beautiful women staring at him, but Felicia's gaze was a little burdensome. In-gong shrugged and replied,

"Let's talk after we go back."

"Yes, we should return. The operation is a success."

Naturally, it was Chris who spoke. In-gong, who was surprised by Chris' sudden appearance, habitually zoomed in on the mini-map. Chris then laughed and hugged In-gong's shoulders.

"Oppa."

"Yes, Caitlin. I'm glad to know that you're okay."

Although he had the blood of orcs all over his body, he didn't seem to care.

Chris looked at the only uncomfortable face over In-gong's shoulder.



"It has been a while, Felicia noonim."

(more formal version of Noona)

His voice and expression was completely different from when he talked to Caitlin and In-gong.

In-gong swallowed his saliva involuntarily as Felicia looked up. Whether it was a blessing or misfortune, Felicia maintained a calm attitude in front of Chris.

"It has been a while."

Felicia replied briefly and Chris gave a bloody smile like he found Felicia's reaction interesting.

In-gong intervened the two people.

"Chris hyung, what about General Vandal?"

In fact, he was quite curious about this. Depending on the result of the battle, the war itself could end.

"It will take a while, so let's go back and talk. Also, Shutra, can you block the other side of the dwarf portal?"

In-gong stuttered at Chris' sudden question.

"Uh, it is possible."

He'd read that there was such a function. It was an emergency function for when the enemy seized a portal.

The conversation flowed naturally, but there was a person who felt goosebumps. Felicia glanced at Caitlin with confusion and Caitlin smiled while replying,

"Shutra can read dwarf characters. He is also the one who figured out how to use the portal."

Her expression indicated that she wanted to say 'Amazing!' afterwards.

Felicia looked even more disturbed as she watched In-gong explain to Chris.

"Hurry, Hyung."

It took more time than he thought for more than 400 troops to pass through the portal. In-gong waited until the last person was through and blocked the portal, then Seira approached.

"We have organized a place to rest. Come this way."

They seemed to have cleaned up all the monsters and taken control of the cave.

Seira showed them to a small room decorated like the tent.

"Thank you, Seira. Please step back."

At Chris' command, Seira obediently left the room. In-gong also glanced at Carack who then left.

Once there were only four people left in the room, Chris opened his mouth.

"General Vandal also won. I think Yakuzan gave up the battle once he saw the base burning."

Yakuzan was the leader of the Red Lightning tribe.

In-gong asked Chris,

"Did Yakuzan surrender?"

"No, they just scattered in different directions. If he gathers all the scattered Red Lightning tribe members and allies, the battle can still drag on."

Beyond the mountain where In-gong's group was located, there was still Kairam who was Kaichin's brother. If the split-up troops gathered where Kairam was, their numbers would be significant.

This time, it was Caitlin who asked,

"Oppa, is General Vandal tracking Yakuzan?"

"Perhaps. Well, it was just mere chance that he hadn't caught Yakuzan straight away."

Chris had been fighting at the base of the Red Lightning tribe the whole time. Therefore, he wouldn't have been able to see the battle between General Vandal and Yakuzan's army but he seemed pretty convinced the enemy was cornered.

"Anyway, the Red Lightning tribe was hit hard by this operation. Yakuzan's authority has cracked and you managed to rescue Felicia noonim... No matter what anyone else says, the one with the highest achievements in this mission is you, Shutra."

Chris tapped In-gong's shoulders while Caitlin stared at him with shining eyes.

In-gong worried about how to answer for a moment before finally laughing.

"Thank you, it is also thanks to both of you."

He didn't know if it was due to the atmosphere, but the temperature of the room seemed quite warm.

As always, Chris laughed and knocked against In-gong's shoulder before his expression changed. His cold gaze was directed at Felicia, not In-gong.

"Okay, now it is Noonim's turn."

Felicia frowned while Caitlin stared into her eyes.

Chris asked with a smile,

"Why did you come here?"

"Don't you already know?"

"I want to hear it."

Chris was smiling but his eyes were completely different. In-gong swallowed his saliva.

‘Yes, this is the real Chris.’

The beast, the beast - a predator hunting his prey.

Felicia bit her lip and sighed. She shrugged slightly and said,

"I heard news of the battle while studying relics nearby. I came to help but went down the wrong path and ran into them. Do you need any further explanation?"

Her words were just as expected. Perhaps, Chris also knew he wouldn't hear anything else.

‘Is it just a quarrel? Or does he want to kill her?’

Either option wasn't good for his mentality. Moreover, the person was Felicia, not Zephyr.

He would prefer drawing her to his side, rather than hurting her feelings.

"Hey, isn't it time to get some rest? Isn't everybody tired?"

In-gong interrupted naturally and Chris nodded.

"Yes, that's right. Noonim can have this room. People will soon arrive with things to allow you to wash up."

"Bah."

Felicia snorted but didn't express any dissatisfaction. No, it seemed like she wanted to wash up as quickly as possible.

"Then we will leave. Have a good night's sleep, Noona."

In-gong hastily said goodbye to Felicia and tried to leave the room with Chris and Caitlin. It was at that moment...

"Excuse me."

“Huh?”

He turned back at the call and saw Felicia who was looking away. She looked down and said in a very small voice,

"I want to thank all three of you. I'm alive thanks to you."

“Eh?”

Chris turned back. Caitlin blinked and smiled brightly while In-gong also laughed.

Felicia squinted at all three of them before turning away.

"I don't know, I'm going to rest. Leave now!"

Her back didn't show anything, but he could see her embarrassment from how red her ears turned.

In-gong refrained from laughing and followed Chris and Caitlin out.

"She is still cute. She is fine even when making a mistake."

Chris said with a laugh as soon as they left the room. Caitlin smiled again and turned to In-gong.

"It is a good thing. Thank you, Shutra. It is all thanks to you."

Their actions towards Felicia seemed to tell a story.

What was the relationship between Chris, Caitlin and Felicia?

'It seems pretty good just looking at Caitlin and Felicia... Is the problem with Chris?'

He didn't have an answer right now. Instead of worrying about it, In-gong scratched his cheek and responded to Caitlin.

“It is the result of fighting together. All the merits are ours.”

It might have seemed like flattery, but Caitlin nodded instead of laughing.

Chris placed an arm over In-gong's shoulder.

"Come, let's wash and take a break before going to sleep. Tomorrow is likely to be quite busy."

Chris glanced at In-gong. It was a gaze that seemed to be testing In-gong.

'He isn't talking about Yakuzan.'

If they were taking care of Yakuzan, there would be no reason to travel back through the portal.

Then there was only one reason remaining.

"Are you talking about Kairam?"

"Yes, what reason do we have for allowing them to join Yakuzan?"

Kaichin's older brother, Kairam - it was his troops that were beyond the mountains and they were likely unaware of what had happened to the Red Lightning tribe's base.

The reason they weren't attacking now was because the soldiers were exhausted from today's fight.

"I am looking forward to your actions, Shutra."

Chris tapped In-gong before going his own way and it was the same for Caitlin.

In-gong was left alone with Carack.

"Prince's room is over there. I will prepare a bath."

Carack was always the same. In-gong couldn't help laughing.

"What is it?"

"No, it's just. I am strangely relieved."

In-gong replied and started stretching. It had been a hard day.

He had gained a level, built up his merits and learnt magic.

‘I also found a new alliance candidate.’

In-gong glanced at the room Felicia was in and nodded. Then, he followed Carack’s footsteps.

# Chapter 26

## Awakening

Having a bath after a battle was fantastic, like taking a sip of water in a desert.

'Huah, I can rest a little bit now.'

He just washed in hot water and could feel all the exhaustion draining away.

'Well, it might be due to the effect of levelling up.'

He reached level 10 and all this stamina had recovered.

'Although I still have some mental fatigue... It is good.'

In-gong dried his head with the towel and threw his body onto the cot.

'I should do some skill research instead of going to sleep.'

He activated the skills window and moved his hands through the air as he saw that the number of skills had increased significantly.

In-gong examined the magic-based skills.

[Magic Power Control Lv1]  
[Fire Arrow Lv1]  
[Ice Arrow Lv1]  
[Heal Lv1]

'It looks good.'

He felt a bit of resentment due to the pain he felt when learning it.

'Don't I have aura, magic and psychic power?'



If he obtained divine power and spirit power techniques, a truly universal character would be born.

'However, my magic and psychic powers are still weak... The only one worth using right away is Aura.'

In-gong touched his newly acquired skill points with his fingertips. Should he choose Aura again or distribute a few points to the other side?

'The hidden card is the psychic power.'

Among the three powers, In-gong had already revealed magic and aura power. Caitlin and Chris knew about In-gong's aura, while Felicia found out about magic.

'I would like to conceal the psychic power.'

It would be a trump card that opponents wouldn't be able to predict.

'Having a secret is a strong force in itself.'

In-gong nodded as he muttered and started to practice Telekinesis. Rather than pushing it all at once, he pushed it forward little by little. He had many skills, so he needed to practice them when there was a chance.

'Sooner or later, Chris and Caitlin will be teaching me Aura and Divine Beast Right, so I should save my skill points. It would benefit me to invest them in Divine Beast Right.'

In-gong organized his thoughts and looked at the other side. There were skills that caught his eyes - he'd been unable to raise the level for these.

[Protagonist Correction Lv 2]

What was the effect of levelling up? Surely, it didn't just end with the skill Battlefield Protection?

'No, there must be something more.'

For example, if he increased the skill level of Aura, the attack power would increase. It would also be followed by a variety of effects. It was clear that something else must have changed with Protagonist Correction.

'Maybe my stats will be a little higher every time I level up?'

Or, perhaps, something else relating to a protagonist?

'Then, this is also an event.'

In-gong laughed at the thought - an event within an event. It was at that moment...

"Shutra."

"Huh?"

The voice of a female was heard from beyond the door. In-gong was certain that it was Felicia's voice.

"Shutra, can I enter?"

'What is happening that she comes to speak to me in the middle of the night?'

Don't tell me there is a real event?

The confused In-gong jumped out of bed.

"Uh, yes. Come in."

The door opened as soon as In-gong replied. As he'd expected, it was Felicia who opened the door.

"Manage your subordinate. His fighting skills are good, but his mental state is too young."

As soon as she came in, he could see Carack sleeping beyond the open door.

"Carak is also tired. There are separate guards in the passage."

"Well, I did approach quietly."

Felicia shrugged and stepped in. He didn't hear any footsteps, so it was either because she was a dark elf or it was due to magic.

"Uh... Then... What is the matter?"

In-gong asked through the towel covering his head. Felicia had obviously just taken a bath as her hair was slightly wet and her cheeks and neck were red.

'Where is the dark elf outfit?'

Unfortunately, she wasn't wearing the dark elf outfit that was reminiscent of a swimsuit. Instead, she was wearing the white tunic that Caitlin's lycanthropes normally wore.

Felicia closed the door, glanced at In-gong and ordered,

"Take off your top."

"Huh?"

In-gong was bewildered. Take it off - she had suddenly ordered him to take something off!

As In-gong's gaze filled with surprise and anticipation, Felicia sat down next to In-gong.

"Take off your top. I'll look at your wound. I was in a hurry and didn't treat it properly."

'Ah, it was that.'

In-gong sighed with relief and disappointment and took off his top without saying anything. However, he could feel a strange gaze.

"What?"

"Uh... That... Did Shutra always have such a good body?"

After Felicia's words, In-gong looked down at himself. Certainly, he was still bony but his muscles were quite good.

"I have been exercising."

In fact, this was the effect of levelling up. His muscles would develop as his stats became higher.

Felicia laughed and slapped In-gong's shoulder.

"Now, get down. Let me see your back."

In-gong flinched involuntarily at the words but laid down, revealing his back to Felicia.

"Well, okay. There are no wounds. I think that the recovery magic was good."

There was no more pain. It was due to the recovery magic that Felicia had previously used on him. It might have been her best recovery magic.

'Anyway, this is an opportunity.'

It was a perfect opportunity to gain some recovery magic and he absolutely couldn't miss it.

"Noona, can't you give me another recovery spell just in case?"

"I already used Massive Heal on you. Aren't there no wounds?"

"Uh... It seems like there is an abnormal state."

Felicia's eyes widened.

"Perhaps you have frostbite in your body? Let me look."

Her hands glowed green as she cast a recovery spell.

[Cure Lv1 has been learnt.]

‘Ohh!’

A recovery magic that restored normal states. Although it was lower than Recovery, which was a universal magic, it was able to restore all wounds.

“How is it? Are you okay?”

"Hmm, then Noona, do you have any poison healing magic?"

“What? I don’t think the ice arrow had poison in it.”

It was irrational but he couldn’t give up. In-gong frowned and said,

"No, when I was fighting the orcs..."

"Were you hit somewhere?"

"I was hit in the back but it doesn’t hurt due to Noona’s recovery magic.”

After lying, In-gong groaned slightly and buried his face in the sheet.

“Umm, I understand. Let me look.”

This time, the light around Felicia’s hands was purple and In-gong smiled at the sight.

[Cure Poison Lv1 has been learnt.]

'Good, good.'

However, that wasn’t the end.

"A cure for diseases..."

“Shutra?”

Felicia’s voice was somewhat cold. However, In-gong decided to push once more.

"Please.”

"Hah, wait."

This time there was a yellow light.

[Cure Disease Lv1 has been learnt.]

He had learnt three new recovery magics quickly. All three of them were invincible and useful spells.

'Is it impossible for anything else?'

He wanted to learn more, such as magic that removed curses, but it would seem strange to demand anything else.

'Anyway, she will just grumble if I ask for anything more.'

Maybe he could ask Caitlin, who was easier than Felicia.

'It had been impossible to understand her when I played as Zephyr.'

It hadn't been a situation where Zephyr could ask Felicia for something.

"Okay, are you fine now?"

"Yes, thank you."

In-gong sat up and put on his top again. Felicia glanced at him and laughed quietly.

"You have become quite muscular and manly. You even learnt magic. Do you like it now?"

Fortunately, Felicia didn't ask In-gong about the magic he used today. When thinking about it, it was the inevitable result. It wasn't strange for a child of the Demon King to know how to use magic.

'What is the relationship between Shutra and Felicia? Looking at Felicia, isn't the relationship similar to the one between a chicken and a cow?'

It didn't seem to be a close friendship. If not, this conversation would've been different.

'It isn't bad.'

It seemed like she felt quite favourable towards In-gong. It seemed possible to drag her into his faction.

'Don't rush it.'

There was no hurry. The announcement of factions would take place in a year or two and that was when the confrontation between the children of the Demon King would start.

"By the way, Shutra."

"Huh?"

"Chris... Caitlin, when did you get so friendly with them? Ah, were you this close originally?"

'Felicia will come naturally.'

She was awkward around Chris but the other parts were as usual.

'Is Chris also uncomfortable? And... What is with this talk?'

Just as In-gong saw Felicia as an alliance candidate, Felicia seemed to see In-gong as an alliance candidate and wanted to attract him.

'Isn't that it? Or is she just curious?'

There were various ways to interpret the situation. Instead of thinking deeply, In-gong answered lightly,

"No, I befriended them after coming here."

That was true. It was much better to tell the truth instead of lying.

"Hmm, is that so?"

Felicia smiled and stood up.

"I will go now. You should go to sleep."

Felicia had a strange and brusque way of speaking.

"Yes. Noona, have a good night's sleep."

He wanted to ask about her relationship with Chris and Caitlin, as well as the spirits, but In-gong wasn't too greedy. He waited until Felicia closed the door and lay down on the bed again.

"Cure."

He muttered and a small green light appeared at his fingertips. Although the magic power consumption was considerable, he couldn't help smiling.

'I've figured something out.'

Felicia stated that she'd used Massive Heal, yet In-gong only learned Heal Lv1.

'Massive Heal is a skill that is automatically learnt when Heal reaches Lv5. It is natural to learn the skill from Lv1.'

Despite this, In-gong was still smiling because it was understandable.

It didn't matter about the level. To be honest, it was still a fraudulent ability. He just learnt three new spells.

'Okay, then shall I continue practicing?'

In-gong settled his mind and used Telekinesis again.



# Chapter 27

## Awakening #2

"Kairam is moving."

The next morning, Chris spoke to everyone who had gathered in one place.

"I think his main priority will be to join Yakuzan. Before the day becomes bright, we need to be prepared to launch maneuvers."

He clicked his tongue at the end of his words.

'If I'd woken up late and missed it, would he have allowed me to sleep?'

Getting up late was always a welcome thing, but it would certainly be a shame to let Kairam go.

Felicia made a 'hah' sound and asked with a little bit of provocation.

"Can't you take care of them on your own?"

Chris laughed wildly. His face was obviously a human but his eyes were like a wild beast.

Felicia didn't avoid his gaze while Caitlin looked between the both of them with uneasy eyes. Fortunately, Chris shifted his gaze first. Chris sighed and shrugged slightly before explaining.

"These guys are acting faster than I expected. Even their withdrawal is orderly. I've been keeping an eye on him and would have struck if there was a chance but... I judged it was better not to. Kairam is more competent than I thought."

The battle last night was definitely a big hit. Even so, the troops in this area hadn't received any damage. Additionally, while the lycanthropes were full of health, the orcs had no regenerative power. Striking blindly with cornered troops could increase the

damage.

'They can also escape through the cave.'

Thanks to the cave, they could move directly using the shortest distance. However, that short distance was also a problem.

Felicia pouted after hearing Chris' explanation and nodded.

"Well, if that is the situation."

In the first place, Felicia wasn't in a rush. There was no need to argue.

"Then what will you do now?"

Caitlin asked Chris. Chris replied by moving the models on the battlefield map.

"General Vandal contacted me. Yakuzan seems to be attempting a last hurrah here. This is Kairam's path."

The orc models of the Red Lightning tribe were moved to the southeast. It was the edge of the Jishuka Mountains.

"For now, we will join General Vandal and shatter the Red Lightning tribe."

The three models of In-gong, Caitlin and Chris, that seemed more realistic than others, were moved to Vandal's model.

The dwarf portal and cave weren't connected to this section of the Jishuka Mountains and the enemies were gathered in one place. Therefore, there was no need to divide the troops.

Chris added like it was an afterthought,

"Ah, the dark elves are with Vandal, so they will meet you when we join up."

Right now, she had no attendants but Felicia had originally led over 100 dark elves.

Felicia hesitated before asking Chris.

"May I know the number of casualties?"

It was completely different from her normal expression. Due to that, Chris replied more softly than his previous cold tone.

"I haven't been sent the details but... honestly, there seems to be a lot of damage. They fought pretty hard for Noonim."

That was for certain. The sight of the dark elves struggling recklessly against a large number of enemies was still in In-gong's head.

Felicia's expression darkened but it was only for a moment. She soon returned to her usual expression like she didn't want to show any weaknesses.

Chris' face became strangely relieved and he said to In-gong, Caitlin and Felicia.

"I'm going to do some miscellaneous things that are required. In the meantime, Caitlin should start teaching Shutra Aura and Beast Authority."

"Yes, I understand."

Caitlin responded positively. In-gong had been looking forward to this, so his expression brightened.

It was at that moment...

"Wait, you are teaching him Aura? Shutra, do you know Aura?"

Felicia asked, blinking with shock.

A child of the Demon King could use magic, but Aura was different. Now, In-gong-Shutra knew how to use Aura?

"Uh... yes."

In-gong smiled awkwardly. 'Isn't it great?' - Caitlin was happy despite being interrupted but Felicia's eyes were different from usual.

‘Is that greed in her eyes?’

It was similar to how Chris looked at In-gong.

‘If I look into the abyss, will I see it looking back?’

It was slightly different from Nietzsche’s saying, but In-gong thought of similar words. Just as In-gong coveted Felicia, Felicia also coveted In-gong.

‘The problem is that we are in different factions.’

Who would win?

In-gong left the room with Caitlin while Felicia followed them.

Among the lycanthropes, the proportion of warriors was overwhelmingly high.

The reason was due to the hand techniques of the lycanthropes.

The lycanthropes’ hand techniques alone were powerful weapons. If they had a natural weapon in the form of their hands, there was no need for weapons.

In addition to that, there was another decisive reason.

‘Apart from hand techniques, their sizes can change.’

It was the same for Caitlin’s aide, Seira.

Her height was quite tall at 170cm, but it was nothing compared to when she was transformed. In that state, her height was close to two metres and her hands and feet were almost twice as big as when she was human.

There weren’t many changes to Seira aside from becoming oversized. However, there were some who could grow to at least three metres tall.

Therefore, in order to use a weapon, the lycanthropes would have to carry both human and lycanthrope form weapons at the same time. This was inconvenient and inefficient. Moreover, the weapons for the lycanthrope form were too large and heavy for their human forms to carry.

Anyway, this was the reason why there were so many warriors among the lycanthropes and most of them learnt the same thing.

Beast Authority.

A martial art that was the symbol of the lycanthropes.

"It should be obvious but there are quite a few factions among the Beast Authority technique. Shutra should pick the one most suited to you."

As usual, Caitlin was wearing leather armour and she explained it step by step.

There were two reasons why Caitlin chose to teach him Beast Authority first.

One, Caitlin and Chris had originally learn Beast Authority first.

The 4th Queen Elaine Moonlight was a werewolf, so those with her blood naturally learned the werewolf faction of Beast Authority.

Two, Beast Authority was used as a base for Divine Beast Authority.

The royal family of the lycanthropes were primarily composed of werewolves. If he wanted to learn Divine Beast Authority, it was natural to learn Beast Authority first.

In-gong knew the situation and nodded. Caitlin continued,

"Beast Authority uses both External Force Aura and Internal Strength Aura. Today, I will teach you basic aura management using Internal Strength Aura."

Beast Authority wasn't simply something that used the toughness of the body. Through the unique aura management method, the performance of the physical body and the destructive power of the technique would be enhanced.

'Is this like a martial art in a novel?'

Thinking about it, he felt It was pretty similar. It was possible to think of aura management as a type of technique.

“Does Felicia unni want to learn? Unni can learn it as well.”

Caitlin suddenly asked Felicia who was sitting in a corner. Both In-gong and Felicia were confused by her question.

“Huh? Ah... No, I’m fine. I’ll just watch.”

Felicia laughed awkwardly and waved her hands. It was definitely softer than the way she treated Chris.

‘It is ironic.’

Basically, the children of the Demon King weren’t nice to each other unless they were from the same family or in the same faction. He also didn’t know the reason why Chris and Felicia were growling at each other.

However, Caitlin wanted to get along with her half-siblings. That sentiment was especially true in regards to In-gong.

‘By the way, Caitlin isn’t a child of the Demon King.’

Did Caitlin truly not know that she wasn’t the child of the Demon King?

“Now, Shutra, follow the way I induce my aura.”

Caitlin approached while he was thinking. In-gong locked hands with Caitlin and nodded. Caitlin said again,

"Close your eyes and find your aura. I’ll start.”

Caitlin’s blue aura started to guide In-gong’ white aura.

Aura.

Life force - it was close to the power of the soul and it became the power of the soul once it reached the limit.

[Passive Skill - Protagonist Body Lv1 has been learnt.]

‘Huh?’

In-gong naturally flinched while moving his aura.

‘W-what?’

Protagonist Body.

In-gong opened his eyes and hurriedly activated the skills window.

Author's Note:

Shutra’s name comes from Dhrutharashṭa (One of the four Guardian Kings in Buddhism. Leader of the gandharva).

# Chapter 28

## Awakening #3

Just like Below the King's Flag was under the Conquest skill, Protagonist Body was directly below Protagonist Correction.

[Protagonist Body Lv1]

Lv1: When learning skills, the body's efficiency will increase greatly.

Lv2: ???

Lv3: ???

Lv4: ???

Lv5: ???

If the skill reached the next level, he would be able to see new features.

'Indeed, a protagonist.'

He didn't have the body of a demon but the body of a protagonist. Moreover, the effect was truly like a protagonist's, even though the skill was only level one.

'This isn't an effect of Protagonist Correction's level rising.'

It seemed like acquiring Beast Authority had activated the skill.

'If I keep increasing the level, will it be better than Zephyr's Body Guard or Locke's Blood of a Warrior?'

Both were passive skills that used magic and divine power respectively.

[Beast Authority Lv1 has been learnt.]

Thus far, nothing significant had changed. He learnt Basic Swordsmanship by



swinging a sword once. The speed of how fast he could train was the key.

"Shutra, pay attention."

Caitlin said as she applied a little bit of pressure to his hands. She still had her eyes closed but she was making a solemn expression.

In-gong closed his eyes again and focused on Caitlin's aura. After going around the circuit five times, Caitlin slowly loosened her hands.

"Follow the route I just taught you. I will now teach you the eight basic movements of Beast Authority. Pay attention to my breathing."

Caitlin moved back a few steps and slowly moved her limbs. Her movements were very slow because it was a display for In-gong.

In-gong wasn't well-versed in martial arts, but he had some degree of awareness about Caitlin's demonstration in front of him. She needed to have a certain degree of mastery in the martial art technique in order to demonstrate it slowly like this.

Caitlin demonstrated three of the basic movements before looking at In-gong.

"You don't have to do everything. Just try these three first."

In-gong moved his hands and feet in a manner similar to Caitlin's. Since Beast Authority was already Lv1, there wasn't much difficulty in following the basic movements.

However, In-gong felt completely different from when he used Basic Swordsmanship or Dagger Throwing.

In-gong's aura responded to his movements.

'This is Aura.'

So far, it followed everything he had already known. It was a force that was completely different which moved within the bones and muscles of his arms and legs.

'This is Beast Authority.'

His hands were bare but it felt like he was holding a weapon. He felt like he could smash rocks with his bare hands.

This was aura based martial arts.

In-gong could understand why Chris and Caitlin were surprised when he awakened Aura.

It was a miracle. The presence of an aura itself caused a dramatic gap in combat power.

He suddenly got goosebumps.

Beast Authority was only Lv1 while Aura was Lv3. Nevertheless, In-gong felt like there were still quite a large gap.

He had seen how ferocious and strong Caitlin was.

Furthermore, In-gong's own enemy, Zephyr, was the strongest among the Demon King's children.

In-gong had only learnt a few minor magic spells.

Even in the world where In-gong had lived originally, the gap between individual people would be enormous depending on the training. There was magic and aura in this world, so the strength of an individual would be able to transcend In-gong's imagination.

'I have to become stronger.'

He was motivated by a desire to survive . He calmed his heart and noticed that everything around him was silent.

Caitlin and Felicia were staring at In-gong.

In-gong hurriedly asked Caitlin,

"Uh, is something wrong?"

Were his movements wrong? Were his punches and kicks not powerful?

Caitlin blinked a few times at In-gong's question before replying hastily,

"No, well done. Shutra is amazing. The basic movements of Beast Authority were done correctly."

All three movements correctly demonstrated Aura. They were only the basic movements, but they weren't easy.

"You- you are Shutra, right?"

A voice was heard from behind him. In-gong looked around and saw Felicia's face full of confusion and doubt.

She didn't know how to use Aura but she wasn't ignorant about it. Her brother Silvan had an incredibly strong aura.

Looking at it objectively, In-gong was at an ordinary level. He just followed the basic movements that Caitlin did.

However, it was learnt immediately afterwards and the person doing it was Shutra.

'No, that is a bias. Didn't I see him fight yesterday? Learning aura is separate from martial arts.'

Felicia regained her stability. When she thought about it properly, it wasn't a big deal. Shutra was also a child of the Demon King. He was old enough to show his skills.

"Felicia noona?"

"No, I'm just a little surprised. Continue."

Felicia sat back down in the corner with a little bit of embarrassment.

"Well, shall we continue?"

Caitlin asked awkwardly and In-gong nodded. Felicia also looked awkward due to the disturbance.

Everyone felt slightly awkward for a different reason.

"Prince! We are starting!"

The rough voice blew away the awkwardness and In-gong smiled widely at the owner of the voice.

"Uh... W-why are you looking like that?"

It wasn't just In-gong but Caitlin and Felicia as well.

In-gong laughed at Carack's words.

"It's just great to see you."

Carack was full of doubts but he was an exemplary orc and didn't ask any questions.

After moving through the dwarf portal and the destroyed base of the Red Lightning tribe, the soldiers starting marching towards the east.

All of the infantry troops consisted of orcs and lycanthropes, so the marching speed was quite fast.

In-gong was moving right next to Caitlin. Thanks to the power of Protagonist Body, Beast Authority was already level three despite it only being three days since he learnt it.

Felicia watched In-gong and Caitlin train for two whole days, but unlike the first day, she didn't intervene.

'Her eyes just shone.'

Did she think that In-gong had already been caught by Chris? So, that was why In-gong showed himself off to Felicia?

'Or is there something else?'

The reason not known. He couldn't ask Chris directly, so In-gong just spent the time

getting to know Caitlin and Felicia. He had decided to keep watching.

On the 4th day, In-gong finally met Vandal.

‘Big.’

Although Vandal’s camp was big, the most impressive thing was Vandal and his tent.

The ogre’s private tent was at least six metres tall and under its ceiling was where the red-haired Vandal was located. Vandal seemed even bigger thanks to his broad shoulders. It wouldn’t seem strange if Vandal’s head managed to hit the moon in the sky.

Just looking simply at his height, he was at least twice as tall as In-gong. Vandal turned towards those gathered in the tent and bowed.

“Welcome. I am Vandal.”

A growl-like voice came from him.

Chris responded with a slight nod while Caitlin smiled at Vandal.

Vandal glanced to the side toward Felicia.

“6th Princess, it has been a while.”

"Your tone is still the same. Yes, it has been a while."

Felicia answered confidently as usual. It seemed like they had met several times before.

“This is... the 9th Prince?”

Vandal tilted his head like he wasn’t certain. It seemed like this was our first meeting.

‘Vandal.’

He was one of five subordinates in Knight Saga that In-gong absolutely had to obtain.

The other four were fairly friendly monsters. In-gong held out his hand for a handshake.

“Nice to meet you, Vandal. I am Shutra.”

Vandal seemed somewhat perplexed, but he soon laughed and shook In-gong’s hands.

"It is also nice to meet you."

In-gong’s and Vandal’s hands looked completely different. However, Chris nodded like he was satisfied and Caitlin gave a warm smile. Felicia was the only one who looked confused.

After Vandal finished greeting In-gong, he gave an order.

"Bring the dark elves."

Soon, the tent door opened and one dark elf appeared.

“Royal Princess!”

"Delia!"

A black-haired dark elf, wearing a swimsuit-like outfit similar to Felicia’s, fell to her knees before Felicia.

"It is fortunate that you aren’t hurt, Your Highness."

"I’m glad that you’re okay, Delia"

Felicia replied in a humble voice towards her subordinate.

It was a pretty sight but Felicia didn’t keep it up for long.

Felicia arranged her expression and repeated the name in a louder voice.

“Delia.”

The woman- Delia understood what Felicia’s call meant. She bowed her head towards

In-gong's party.

"Please forgive my rudeness. I am Delia Trident, an assistant to the 6th Royal Princess."

She seemed to be three years older than Caitlin and Seira. Chris replied on behalf of the party.

"I forgive you."

Then he turned his gaze towards Felicia who then clasped Delia's shoulder lightly and said,

"Collect the troops. There are things to do."

"I understand, Your Highness."

Delia wiped her tears before stepping back.

Vandal watched quietly and spoke as soon as the tent door closed.

"Then I will talk about it straight away."

Like the other things in the tent, the battlefield map on the table was also great. Fortunately, the table itself was ordinary.

Rather than Vandal's huge body moving, a soldier moved the orc models on the battlefield instead.

As described earlier by Chris, the Red Lightning tribe were at the edge of the Jishuka Mountains. In the southeastern area where the Red Lightning tribe was, there was a huge swamp. Once that swamp was crossed, it would be the Human World.

"Their numbers are estimated to be approximately 3,000-5,000. There will be more if we add the women, but that is approximately the number of people that can fight."

"Have the troops joined together?"

Vandal frowned at Chris' question.

"They are gathered here and here. It would be nice if we could defeat each one, but the size of the troops is too ambiguous. They can break up and scatter."

At Vandal's words, the moving units were broken up into small troops that couldn't be seen. One of the largest forces was Kairam's but their movements were too elusive.

Chris gazed at the battlefield map and nodded.

"We just have to move before they join up. If we take care of Yakuzan, they will break down."

The purpose of the expedition wasn't the total massacre of the Red Lightning tribe. It was to take care of the ringleaders and tear the tribe apart.

"When will a battle be possible?"

In response to Chris' inquiry, Vandal placed his hand directly on the map.

"We can move tomorrow morning."

Vandal's rough hands pushed the models of the Red Lightning tribe.



# Chapter 29

## Awakening #4

"Don't train today and go to bed early."

Carack said as they returned to the tent after finishing the meeting with Vandal and having dinner. In the last three days, he had been training hard in the tent through the night.

Tomorrow, he would be going out to the battlefield, so he wouldn't worry about growing today.

In-gong understood his meaning and nodded.

"I understand, I understand. What are you, my nanny?"

"Isn't it similar?"

Carack responded naturally and In-gong couldn't refute it. When he thought about it, It did seem similar.

'As expected of Carack - he is a logical orc.'

This was all because he was worried about In-gong.

In-gong raised a finger and said.

"Today, I will only do one basic set."

A basic set consisted of doing the Beast Authority's basic movements three times, Aura training 30 times, moving objects with Telekinesis 50 times and casting magic spells 10 times. Of course, Carack only knew that he was training basic skills and aura circulation.

Carack's expression was serious but he nodded.

"I understand - as long as it is only one set."

"Yes, yes."

Carack left the tent and In-gong started circulating his aura.

'Rather than stopping, I want to do it even more diligently. If I studied like this, would I have made it into Seoul National University?'

In fact, he was forced to work hard. Things might seem like they have gone well so far, but he had already experienced an almost fatal crisis twice. There was a chance that there would be many more crises in the future.

Furthermore, he found the training interesting.

Thanks to Protagonist Body, he was able to see the skill levels going up with constant training. Every time the skill level went up, Beast Authority became more elaborate while Aura and Telekinesis became stronger. The visible achievements increased his motivation.

'Be strong. I want to be strong.'

It wasn't just to win against Zephyr. In-gong simply wanted to become stronger.

It was a world where he could become strong enough to oppose a country's army. There was no law that dictated In-gong couldn't become like that. No, he would become like that.

He was able to imagine Zephyr's strength after awakening Aura and as a result, he felt fear. In fact, In-gong couldn't imagine going against Zephyr's strength.

However, it was different now. It felt like he was climbing a mountain, but he was convinced he could do it.

Someday he would see the summit and he would stand on top of it!

'Uhh, I got distracted. Let's practice.'

In-gong settled his thoughts and started to perform the basic movements of Beast Authority with a calm mind.

The important thing right now wasn't Zephyr, but tomorrow's battle against the Red Lightning tribe.

A white-haired woman wearing a golden crown was facing a woman with red, flame-like hair.

They seemed to be staring at each other, chatting lightly.

In-gong looked at the two people and the two hazy people became a bit clearer. In-gong could see the clothes they were wearing.

The white woman wore clothes reminiscent of a priest's garments. It was similar to the pope's outfit he saw on the Internet.

The red woman was wearing armour. The light red armour was worn over dark red tights.

Conquest and War.

As soon as those two words entered his mind, the white woman and the red woman turned toward In-gong.

"Prince! Wake up! I told you to go to bed early, but did you stay up late again?"

Carack's rough voice shook his eardrums. In-gong was pulled from his sleep and he opened his eyes.

"Uh, no. I just had a little... What, it isn't even that late!"

He glanced at the clock next to the mini-map and saw that it was 5 o'clock in the morning. However, Carack pulled down In-gong's blanket.

"Anyway, hurry up. We have to be ready to go after eating breakfast."

It seemed like he was really looking forward to this. Moreover, he was only an orc but he was being overly rude to a prince.

‘Well, this is Carack.’

In-gong got up and washed with the water Carack prepared. The cold morning air, like the cold water, cleared away all his sleepiness. However, the images were still clear in his head.

‘What was that? That red woman?’

She was the same as the white woman but different. She was as beautiful as the white woman, however, she didn’t feel like a person.

He felt some type of familiarity with the white woman but he felt hostile toward the red woman.

Why? What was In-gong’s relationship with them?

"Prince, let’s go. We can’t be later than the other prince and princesses. Prince is the youngest."

The orc warrior Carack once again interrupted In-gong’s thoughts. In-gong took a deep breath, calmed his mind and left the tent. First of all, the battle with the Red Lightning tribe took priority.

After a simple breakfast in Vandal’s tent, the last strategy meeting was held.

The formation and arrangement of each unit was somewhat complicated, but the basic operation itself was simple.

A rotation formation in a direct confrontation between two sides.

Vandal’s troops would be in the center, while Chris and Caitlin would lead lycanthropes on the right side. Felicia and the dark elves would be in the rear to take advantage of their mobility.

In-gong and the orc unit would be located to the left side.

There was an instant reaction once the expedition started marching. They were ready for battle because they had already guessed it would occur here.

It felt like hours had passed. Once he recovered his spirit, he was standing in the middle of a battlefield where thousand of people were gathered.

"Are you nervous?"

Carack asked from beside In-gong as he watched the green wave of the Red Lightning tribe. In-gong was riding a giant wolf instead of a horse, but Carack was so tall that they were a similar height.

"You?"

"Of course, I am nervous."

Carack laughed, but In-gong didn't laugh along. Thanks to the familiar voice, his nerves eased a little bit.

It was different from when he struck the main base of the Red Lightning tribe. In Romance of the Three Kingdoms, hundreds of thousands of soldiers would come out only to have several thousand survive. He felt stifled by the thought of everyone fighting at the same time.

"Stick with me."

"Yes."

In-gong finally smiled at Carack and looked towards the front. A large horn sounded from Vandal's main troops.

"Advance!"

"Advance!"

Every unit started to move forward uniformly. There was a great shout from the Red Lightning tribe's side as well.

Up to this point, everything was going as expected. Now, the two forces could just collide with each other.

Then something happened.

“Kueeeeeh!”

“Kiaaaaaaaah!”

Fierce roars were heard from the rear of the Red Lightning tribe and the entire battlefield was shaken. At the same time, a haze formed over the Red Lightning tribe and a massive amount of magic power shot into the sky.

Kwang! Kwang! Kwang!

A mass of magic power poured down like a meteor shower over hundreds of metres. Every time a mass of magic power hit the ground, it would explode and flames went on to cover the ground.

Dozens of giant monsters suddenly appeared between the Red Lightning tribe. There were screams from the expeditionary troops as the magic burst around them.

"Swamp mammoth?"

A huge monster living in a swamp. As the name suggested, it looked like a mammoth. However, the size wasn't comparable to a mammoth as the length of the monster was over 20 metres. It was a troublesome monster.

The awful thing about the swamp mammoth wasn't its size. It wasn't an exaggeration to say that the magic fired from a swamp mammoth was like a deadly siege weapon.

‘How?’

A swamp mammoth was a monster that was nearly impossible to domesticate.

"Stick together. Don't let them shoot the magic!"

Someone shouted loudly. It was a reasonable opinion when looking at it from an objective point of view. In the case of a melee, they wouldn't be able to avoid friendly fire.

However, would the swamp mammoth and orcs care about friendly fire?

Moreover, the swamp mammoth wasn't simply a monster that shot magic. The swamp mammoth's roar had the power to break the will of the opponent.

There was no time to think. Magic continued to hit and the damage to his allies was growing. The wolf carrying In-gong started to go crazy and the orcs around him also gave shouts of fear.

"Prince! Get off the wolf!"

Carack yelled and In-gong jumped off the wolf. The wolf ran away and was swept up in a magic explosion.

"Charge."

"Charge."

The cry came from among the Red Lightning tribe. The swamp mammoths advanced while monsters with the head of a lizard came running out from among the orcs.

"Lizardmen!"

Swamp monsters.

In-gong now realized. The Red Lightning tribe hadn't come here for no reason. It was because they believed they could direct the monsters in the swamp. Moreover, they had hid the power until just before the battle.

"Prince! Stay behind me!"

Carack shouted toward In-gong.

A terrible battle had begun.

# Chapter 30

## Awakening #5

Kill, die, break.

There were screams and shouts as both armies engaged with each other and magic power poured out.

Swords moved blindly all over the place. A spear entered the back of an orc warrior and killed the enemy in front of him, while the spear owner was being trampled by a swamp mammoth.

It was difficult to breathe. It was much harder to think rationally.

In-gong clenched his teeth and focused. He only listened to Carack's voice and raised his aura like flames.

He had to survive. In order to do that, he had to mobilize everything he had.

In-gong activated the mini-map as his fist slammed into the orc in front of him. The flow of the fight was obvious.

In-gong guided Carack along the flow while Carack protected In-gong. In this dizzying battlefield, he'd grabbed the best position.

His fists were bruised and bloody while his ears pricked at every loud noise. In-gong cast a recovery spell on Carack and restored his breathing.

The battlefield was changing as the Red Lightning tribe started to push and the expedition withdrew.

On the battlefield, where swords were swinging blindly, there was no way for everyone to survive. In-gong moved with the flow once again. Finally, he saw Carack's legs stop moving.



Once he stopped, it meant the battle was over.

The expeditionary army had been completely defeated.

The Red Lightning tribe didn't pursue the expedition. Due to the nature of the swamp mammoth, they had strong attack power but a limited range of movement per day.

The damage to the expedition forces was enormous. As a result of a single day of battle, approximately one third of the troops were killed or injured and unable to fight.

In fact, it was a miracle that the damage wasn't larger. Without Vandal and Chris, as well as Felicia's magic support, the troops would literally have been wiped out.

"We were complacent."

Chris said to the small gathering of key personnel.

They had laughed at the Red Lightning orcs.

They never imagined that swamp monsters would have joined them. They didn't even think that they would have the magic and ability to hide the huge swamp mammoths.

They had been too drunk on their victory.

"Well, it is lucky that none of us were seriously injured or killed."

Felicia shrugged and replied. Due to her desire to lighten the mood, she kept her voice upbeat.

At Felicia's words, Chris bit his lip and couldn't say anything. It was because he was reminded of his words when arguing about rescuing Felicia.

Chris was clearly stumped by Felicia. He never thought he would be made to feel like this.

Caitlin, who had always wanted to be close to Felicia, gazed at her with a touched expression in her eyes. Meanwhile, Felicia turned her gaze away like she wanted to avoid the pure light from Caitlin. In-gong was able to smile at the sight of both of them.

However, that didn't change the fact that they had been defeated. Both the lycanthropes and dark elves had suffered great damage.

"We can't win in this state."

Vandal said. His voice wasn't filled with hopelessness or defeat. It was just a cold evaluation.

"We must either physically test our troops or ask for reinforcements from the Demon King's Palace."

It was a default declaration of defeat.

The expedition force had been defeated. This meant that all the merits of the Demon King's children would be buried. Rather, they were likely to be blamed for the defeat.

Achievements were important for the children of the Demon King, due to the fact that they were assessed on all activities and their treatment varied according to the outcome. If this expedition ended in defeat, the children of the Demon King, including Chris, would be hit with a considerable political blow.

"It can't be helped. I can't kill my subordinates just because of my irrational ambition."

Chris said with a bitter sigh. Right now, there was no way to overturn the situation without receiving bigger losses.

"I'm sorry, Shutra."

In-gong was the one with the most merits on this expedition. It wasn't an exaggeration to say that his treatment in the palace would have changed drastically due to this battle.

In-gong shook his head at Chris' words.

"No, it is okay."

It would just return In-gong to his starting point. Moreover, he had built an alliance with Chris and Caitlin and learnt many things through this expedition. The fact that he couldn't use the library in the Demon King's Palace for a while was painful, but it was

unavoidable.

"I understand. Then I will dispatch some troops and get the opinion of the Demon King's Palace."

Vandal declared and Chris and Caitlin nodded toward him with gloomy expressions.

It was at that moment...

"Excuse me, I have an idea..."

Felicia raised her small hand. She sounded a little unsure.

"Speak up, 6th Princess. Tell me directly."

At Vandal's request, Felicia coughed lightly. Everyone, especially Chris, was looking at her.

"The reason I came here in the first place was to explore some ruins."

"So?"

Chris asked immediately. Felicia removed the models on the battlefield map and pointed to the edge of the Jishuka Mountains.

"Originally, my destination was here at the edge of the Jishuka Mountains. I was doing research on the lair of the wyrm Enkidu that was here 1,500 years ago."

In the first place, Felicia's achievements had not been based on combat. Her specialties were in non-combat areas such as research and exploration.

"Enkidu used many methods to protect his treasures. The theory that the swamp mammoth is a combat chimera made by Enkidu is widespread in the academic world. It is the reason why the swamp mammoths only exist in this area, when there are many swamps in the Demon World."

Felicia's slender fingers moved gently over the map of the entire Jishuka Mountains.

"The dwarves who lived in the Jishuka Mountains are also among Enkidu's treasure

keepers. Enkidu made weapons for the dwarves to protect his treasures.”

After speaking, Felicia pulled out a piece of parchment from a small bag.

“Thunder Light Anvil.”

The yellow parchment depicted an octagonal altar surrounded by eight dwarf stone statues with large bases.

“Not only can it be used to control the chimera, it is also a weapon capable of destruction. I came here to look for it.”

There was nothing more to explain. Vandal asked.

“There is a weapon like that around here?”

“According to my research, yes. And I am almost certain of it. I joined the expedition in the middle because the Red Lightning tribe was interfering.”

Felicia looked at Chris who seemed to be thinking.

Worrying about it, Chris shook his head.

“It is too much. We can’t hang the fate of everyone on a sudden treasure hunt.”

He wasn’t ignoring Felicia. Chris just needed a little more incentive.

“There is the Thunder Light Anvil.”

“Shutra?”

In-gong was convinced. In the past, he had encountered the Thunder Light Anvil before.

When he played Locke as the main character in Knight Saga, his goal had been to defeat the Demon King and regain peace.

Due to this, there was an event where they had to travel through the Jishuka Mountains and the swamp area to enter the Demon World.

'It was horrible.'

The combination of the swamp mammoths and Thunder Light Anvil was vicious. As the passage was narrow, there was no way to avoid an enormous amount of damage when passing through.

'I thought it was a weapon mobilized by a magician, but it was actually built around an ancient ruin.'

If so, they had to use it. Like Felicia said, if they obtained the Thunder Light Anvil, they would be able to overturn the situation.

'But I can't say that I saw it in a game.'

He had to convince them in some other way.

In-gong swallowed his saliva and opened his mouth.

"When I was studying dwarf characters, I came across this story. A similar story was told among the gandharva. Moreover, I don't think Felicia noona would do a fake study."

The words poured out. If he had told this story the first time they met, he would have been seen as crazy. However, it was different now.

In-gong had proven it by reading the dwarf characters and through his own performance. The bit about the gandharva, that nobody could confirm, was a convincing argument.

After In-gong's words, Felicia pointed to an area on the map and said,

"The entrance to the ruins is likely to be in this vicinity. If we get our hands on the weapons, we can shatter the swamp mammoth."

Felicia finished talking and laughed at In-gong. In-gong laughed along with her.

Vandal frowned at the map before turning towards Felicia.

"6th Princess, I can't give you much time. At most, the limit is a day or two."

"General Vandal?"

Chris was amazed. Vandal declared without any hesitation,

"I will try the path of the 6th Princess and 9th Prince. Even if there is no way, I don't want to run away like this."

Despite there being four Demon King's children here, Vandal was the one in charge.

Chris sighed.

"Felicia noonim, how many troops are required?"

"I don't need a lot because we are exploring ruins. Rather, a minor group of 10 or less will be better."

Felicia replied quickly. Chris had no choice but to look at In-gong beside Felicia.

"Shutra, find the ruins with Felicia noonim."

Chris believed that In-gong was his man as In-gong had demonstrated that he would be a big help through his performance in the dwarf cave.

In-gong nodded.

"I understand. Can Caitlin noona come along?"

It wasn't because he wanted her to go with them or because she was strong. It was because Caitlin's power was necessary to find the Thunder Light Anvil.

"I will go with you."

Caitlin answered instantly. There was a strong will in both of her eyes.

Chris had no choice but to allow it.

"Okay, I will hold on as long as possible with Vandal. They won't be able to commit the

swamp mammoths to every battle.”

The weakness of the swamp mammoths was revealed in today’s battle. The distance they could travel was limited, so there were many difficulties in using them for aggressive raids.

Vandal asked Felicia,

“There isn’t a lot of time. Can you start right now?”

“But do you want to go?”

Felicia shrugged and turned towards In-gong, who responded.

“I have to go.”

Everyone’s gaze moved to a point on the map.

# Chapter 31

## Awakening #6

It was immediately after the battle and their defeat, so everyone was exhausted. However, there was no time to delay.

Chris distributed health potions to In-gong, who handed them over to Carack. In-gong then ate a few pieces of jerky and headed to Felicia's tent.

Caitlin had already arrived at the tent of Felicia, who was the captain of this ruins exploration.

There weren't many people gathered in the tent because the operation needed to be carried out secretly. Additionally, in the first place, not many people were actually needed for it.

In-gong brought Carack, who was carrying a large bag on his back, while Caitlin was accompanied by Seira.

Delia, who had been introduced by Felicia, and another nameless dark elf were present.

He wanted to ask who she was, but Felicia seemed to have no intention of introducing her. Caitlin was silent, so In-gong also stayed quiet.

"Okay, let's get started."

However, Felicia just swaggered out of the tent like she was going to face the enemy right then.

"Heok, don't tell me that we are walking?"

Carack's aghast voice entered In-gong's ears. Carack, who had always been disgruntled, was weary after the long battle.



'What did he say?'

Should he ask Felicia?

While In-gong was troubled over this, Felicia looked over. Her long ears pricked up as she laughed,

“Don’t worry. We are flying. Delia, Katuin.”

After Felicia called out, Delia and a dark elf called Katuin chanted a spell with her. Out of reflex, In-gong looked above the heads of the three people.

'Magic power is gathering!'

However, it was different from attack or recovery magic. Black smoke emerged from their united magic power and formed a shape.

'Phantom steed!'

A flying ghost!

Seven ghosts shone with a green light as they stood in front of Felicia.

“Wouldn’t it be trouble if we had to bring a lot of people? Let’s hurry.”

Felicia winked at everyone before climbing on the back of a phantom steed. Carack hesitated while Caitlin’s eyes shone as she stroked the mane of a phantom steed.

'I often rode this when I was playing Zephyr.'

He felt a cold chill as he climbed on the back of the ghost.

'Well, isn’t it natural?'

There wasn’t just attack magic and recovery magic. Moreover, summoning magic like the one for a phantom steed required a catalyst.

Once all the party members were on the phantom steeds, Felicia looked back and said.

"I will lead on the phantom steed. However, be careful. Are you ready? Depart!"

Since there was almost no gap between getting ready and departing, Carack had no choice but to grab onto the phantom steed's neck tightly.

In-gong lowered his body on the back of the phantom steed. The phantom steed's four legs sprang into the air and the wind started to blow.

It was a dark hour and the party that rose on the back of the phantom steeds naturally became one with the darkness.

The wind that blew was cold and sharp, so In-gong looked at the mini-map with his head bowed. The blue dots, which symbolised In-gong and his companions, were headed towards the edge of the Jishuka Mountains at a terrific pace.

'Red Lightning tribe!'

Red dots gathered at a corner of the mini-map but they disappeared quickly. In-gong stared at the mini-map for a while but he couldn't see the Red Lightning tribe anymore.

The phantom steeds landed on the ground after almost an hour. They were at the edge of the Jishuka Mountains, at the location that Felicia had pointed to on the map.

As soon as they landed, Carack jumped off the phantom steed like he was rolling. In fact, he actually was rolling down.

Felicia called out to the spirits of light to brighten the surroundings and said to everyone,

"Everybody, dismount carefully. I'll send the phantom steeds back. We will have to move on feet from here on."

She confirmed the location through research, but she had never visited it herself. Rather than flying on the phantom steed, it was better to look at the mountainside with their own eyes.

However, In-gong cried out just before Felicia dismounted from the phantom steed.

"Wait, wait a minute Noona."

"Huh? Why?"

Felicia raised her head with a dubious expression and asked him why. In-gong moved his phantom steed close to her and asked.

"Is the entrance to the ruins near here?"

"Probably, there is a very high possibility."

It was a somewhat ambiguous answer, but her eyes and voice were confident. In-gong swallowed his saliva and said straight to Felicia's face,

"Then can you follow my lead here? In my opinion, there is no need to search for the entrance."

"What? What are you talking about?"

"Right. What does that mean?"

Carack, who regained his stability thanks to having two feet on the ground, asked urgently. He didn't want to ride the phantom steed again.

He was speaking informally and Delia and Katuin's expressions darkened. In-gong spoke quickly before Felicia pointed out Carack's disrespect.

"While I was opening the dwarf portal, I looked closely at the map in the cave. The dwarves already knew of this place."

Of course, it was a lie. He never looked closely at the map or found anything related to these ruins but he needed to say something plausible.

"Considering the characteristics of this terrain and the dwarf cave, as well as the story that I heard, I think I know the approximate location."

"Location? The location of the room that holds the light?"

Felicia corrected her posture on the phantom steed and asked with confusion. In-gong nodded.

"Yes, that's right. I don't think we need to go to the entrance when considering the terrain."

Felicia's expression became even stranger. Delia and Katuin maintained their expressions, but he could see incredulity in their eyes.

Additionally, Carack didn't stay silent.

"Prince, what does that mean? Instead of going through the door, are you going to make a hole in the wall to enter?"

Indeed, Carack's comprehension wasn't common for an orc. In-gong said with a smile,

"Yes, that's right. The cave was used by Enkidu's treasure keepers, so it is virtually like a dungeon. There might be traps or guardians still moving. It is much better to make a gap than to break through the entrance."

In-gong's voice was confident and he believed firmly in his own words.

It was because he actually did that when he played Locke.

The event to destroy the Thunder Light Anvil had been a necessary event to take over the Demon World.

After playing Locke five times, he remembered clearly where and how to break through.

However, he couldn't tell everyone that he knew about it from a game. That's why In-gong was forced to think up reasons to explain it.

Felicia stared at In-gong. Her eyebrows raised like she was worried and she opened her mouth.

"No, no matter how much sense it makes..."

"It is possible. Shutra can tell."

Caitlin interrupted Felicia's words. She placed her hands on her waist and spoke firmly

to the surprised Felicia.

"Shutra's ability to grasp the terrain is really amazing. So, Shutra will be able to do it. Isn't that right, Seira?"

She was perplexed by Caitlin's sudden call but she nodded quickly. It was because In-gong had already proven his skill. It wasn't simply memorization.

"Yes, that's right. I believe in him."

Caitlin looked at Felicia with a look that said, 'Do you hear me?'

In-gong said determinedly,

"Felicia noona, trust me once."

Although he didn't intend to do so, he had a pleading expression on his face. For the first time, he seemed to be benefiting from Shutra's good looks.

Felicia looked between In-gong and Caitlin and sighed.

"Okay, I will try it once. Where do you think we should go?"

"Thank you, just wait."

In-gong jumped down from the phantom steed, picked up a branch and started drawing a map on the ground. His Map Reading skill had reached level two. so it wasn't just a scribble on the ground.

"Our position is here and this is where we need to go."

Caitlin, Seira and Carack nodded as In-gong pointed to their position, but Felicia was skeptical.

However, Felicia knew how to keep her word. Since she had already decided to believe him, she prepared for the phantom steeds to leave instead of talking any longer.

"Give me the directions. I will drive the phantom steeds."

“I understand, thank you, Noona.”

In-gong laughed and Felicia eventually said,

“I must be crazy.”

Felicia mumbled as she controlled the phantom steeds and flew back up into the sky.

There was quite a considerable distance toward the place where In-gong had pointed to. Moreover, the surroundings were dark, so it was hard to find the way when looking down from the sky.

However, it wasn't an exaggeration to say that In-gong's mini-map was a fraudulent system. He checked their current location with the mini-map and acted as Felicia's navigator.

At first, Felicia followed In-gong's directions with an uncertain face, but she soon became speechless. Caitlin saw Felicia's expression and smiled.

They arrived at the destination without much difficulty but the atmosphere was different from before. Their current location wasn't far from the swamp where the swamp mammoths and lizardmen resided in the Jishuka Mountains.

“Okay, it probably isn't around here. They pushed us back, so now it is our turn to push them. Even if the swamp is close, it is quite far on the map.”

In-gong didn't know if Carack was a mind-reader or just thought about it properly, but Carack said what he was thinking.

Felicia agreed and called light to the surroundings, but the light was weaker than before.

“Shutra, where should we go?”

“Just wait a moment.”

In-gong enlarged the mini-map while pretending to be concentrating. He checked the boundaries of the terrain and found the coordinates.

Of course, he hadn't memorized every feature that appeared in Night Saga. He just remembered this because it was a famous and bad event.

"This way."

In-gong confirmed the coordinates and moved through some bushes. A large wall soon appeared in front of him.

Felicia stared up at the cliff with wide eyes. There was a large crack on the wall like someone had split apart the mountain with a giant knife.

'What is going to happen here?'

In-gong smiled mischievously at the question in Carack's eyes. This was the reason why he argued that Caitlin should come with them.

"Yes, Caitlin noona. It is Noona's turn."

"Huh?"

"Smash that cliff and break it down. Can you do that?"

As a wolf lycanthrope, Caitlin could smash a gate with one blow. It was four years earlier, so Caitlin was weaker. However, In-gong had no hesitation after seeing her in battle. That's why anticipation was in his eyes.

"Eh? Ah... Eh... Yes."

Caitlin couldn't ignore the anticipation in In-gong's eyes and looked up at the cliff with clenched fists. A cold wind was blowing but she was sweating.

"Please take care of it!"

In-gong cheered Caitlin on and Carack also looked at her with admiration. Delia and Katuin were affected by the mood and became excited.

In front of all the gazes, Caitlin swallowed her saliva. She had no choice but to try.

At that moment, Felicia clapped In-gong's back.

"Hey, do you think that Caitlin is a siege weapon? How can she smash it with a punch?"

"Uh, smash it?"

In-gong made a confused expression. Felicia stared incredulously at In-gong while Caitlin bowed her head with a gloomy expression.

"Sorry."

She was sad that she couldn't meet her younger brother's expectations.

Felicia sighed and stepped forward.

"Get out of the way. This Noonim will demonstrate her skills."

Felicia clapped her hands and two different spirits appeared in front of the cliff.



# Chapter 32

## Awakening #7

One was water and the other was wind.

From Felicia's right hand, green wind rose to form a beautiful woman. Felicia commanded the laughing wind spirit, who turned into wind and dug into the cracks of the cliff.

After one or two minutes,..

"Okay, that should be enough."

Felicia muttered and the wind sprang out of the crack. The wind spirit waited in place as Felicia commanded a blue water spirit to emerge from her left hand.

"The crack is enough. Can you do it?"

The water spirit nodded. The water spirit moved away from Felicia and plunged into the same crack the wind spirit had. Soon, the inside of the crack was filled with water.

"Freeze."

This time it was magic, not a spirit. The water that filled the crack froze instantly and the crack started widening due to the expanding ice. In spite of the ice, cracking sounds could be heard.

In-gong now knew what Felicia was doing.

'Indeed, a magician.'

Felicia waved her hands and the ice melted. The water spirit returned to Felicia in the form of a woman and she took out some flasks from her pocket.

"One last blast. Explosions are common when exploring ruins."

She murmured playfully as she placed the flasks, then turned back to In-gong's group.

"Bang!"

A real explosion swallowed up Felicia's words. An enormous amount of dust rose as the cliff crumbled. However, the water and wind spirits took care of it.

"This is a shoddy method."

Perfect workmanship would require a longer time. Felicia winked at In-gong and Caitlin who started clapping.

"Ohh! There is a hole! It is huge!"

Carack exclaimed loudly as he clapped along with In-gong. There was a huge hole that was approximately two metres in diameter.

"Crazy. Is this real?"

Felicia, who seemed to be enjoying the applause, shrugged. Delia and Katuin's expressions weren't much different.

"I told you. It is right here."

In-gong smiled at Caitlin who nodded like she believed him.

"Let me check it quickly."

Felicia summoned her light spirit and entered the hole. Then she let out a cry of confusion.

"Oh, my god."

It was real. There was a large room inside the hole where dwarf characters were carved on the walls.

In-gong entered the hole after Felicia and looked around. It was a large space dozens

of metres wide, with the walls and ceiling resembling what he had seen in the game. There was only one thing different.

"Prince, what is this dome?"

Carack looked at the large metal dome in the middle of the room and asked. The only thing different from In-gong's memories was this dome.

'There are dwarf statues around the sphere and the anvil is inside it.'

He hadn't seen a cover when he was playing as Locke and had destroyed the anvil.

Felicia touched the surface of the dome gently.

"It is like the last safeguard. The Thousand Light Anvil must be inside the dome."

She started tapping on the dome. It didn't seem easy to disassemble.

"Aren't there any dungeon guardians?"

Caitlin asked as she looked at the walls. Felicia was the one who replied.

"This is the innermost room. When exploring ruins, the most powerful guardian is usually found in front of the most important room. The most important room often looks plain."

It was similar to the relationship between a large lock and a treasure chest. The treasure chest couldn't be opened due to the lock.

"Then we have to break this dome?"

Carack asked with wide eyes. Delia and Katuin looked grim while Felicia replied,

"No, we can't mess with it. If we do it wrong, the anvil inside can break."

They had to find a normal method to release the dome. Then Katuin, who was interpreting the dwarf statues and characters engraved on the wall, called out to Felicia.

“Royal Princess.”

Katuin stood before the dwarf statues surrounding the dome. They were the same size as actual dwarves and filled with holes.

Felicia sighed,

"Yes, maybe these guys are the cause."

Three of them were holding real metal swords, but the remaining six were bare despite their arms being in the right posture.

"Uh... Do we have to give them swords?"

Felicia alternated between looking at the dwarf characters and stone statues and nodded.

“Perhaps. I think we need to give them dwarf swords.”

Despite answering, a little bit of bitterness was mixed in her voice.

There was no choice. They suddenly needed six dwarf swords!

"Then should we go back? There is no need to break through the dungeon so we can spare the time."

Felicia sighed as she spoke.

In-gong frowned at her words and he realized one thing.

‘I have some.’

The dwarf swords. It wasn’t just one, but dozens of them!

In-gong activated the inventory window that he had forgotten about for a few days. The weapons he secured on the first day from the dwarf cave were kept very well.

"No, wait a minute."

Everyone's gaze went towards In-gong reflexively. In-gong couldn't just pull out a dwarf sword from his inventory, so he approached Carack.

"Carack, put down that bag for a while."

"Huh? The bag I am carrying?"

"Yes, the bag."

Carack nodded and put down the bag. Carack knew that there were no weapons in the bag because it contained a lot of dry food and water.

However, In-gong stuck his hand deep in the bag and pulled out a short dwarf sword.

"Shutra?"

Caitlin asked In-gong with amazement but the one who was most surprised was Carack.

"Huck, when did you put that in? Did you pack a sword?"

Instead of replying, In-gong put his hands back in the bag and pulled out another dwarf sword.

There was a total of six.

Carack was the one who had carried the bag here, yet it seemed like he was seeing a ghost.

In-gong said naturally,

"I prepared the weapons found in the dwarf cave just in case. I put them in when you weren't there."

"I wouldn't be able to carry all six swords."

Despite In-gong's explanation, Carack thought it was strange. However, he was an orc and soon accepted the reality.

In fact, it was a rather strange story. It was rare for someone to carry six spare swords.

However, the joy and excitement of solving the problem outweighed the doubts.

"This is good. Let's install them."

Felicia, who had the expression of a ruins explorer, picked up a sword. Delia, Katuin, In-gong, Caitlin and Seira all placed a sword in the hands of the dwarf statues.

There was a noise as the swords were absorbed into the holes.

It happened the moment everything was equipped. There was a mechanical sound and the whole room vibrated.

In-gong jumped but Felicia wasn't affected at all. She told everyone in a small voice.

"Calm down and step back. The device is starting."

Felicia's words were true. As everyone took a few steps back, the statues surrounding the dome started to move. They turned exactly halfway towards the dome and another mechanical sound was heard from the dome.

"The dome is opening."

Caitlin muttered in a small voice. The middle of the dome cracked and started to open.

"Thunder Light Anvil."

An enchanted magical weapon used by the wrym Enkidu to guard his treasure.

Felicia's smile widened. As the dome opened, a huge black thunderbolt, symbolising magic power, appeared in front of them and shone with a blue light.

The anvil was really huge. It was one metre long and the anvil plate was wide enough for Carack to lie down on.

It was clearly the Thunder Light Anvil.

However, what should they do now?

Caitlin and Felicia stared at the anvil. Felicia smiled brightly and explained.

"Wait, it isn't complete yet. A final procedure is needed to operate the anvil."

According to the records, there were at least three magic spells built into the Thunder Light Anvil. They couldn't just act without considering the magic.

Felicia approached the anvil carefully and interpreted the letters engraved on the surface. The characters were engraved in the area where the blue light was shining.

'The speed is different.'

In-gong had reached level two in Dwarf Characters due to his training, but it was still only level two. Felicia was an expert in ruins exploration, so it was natural that she would interpret it faster and more accurately.

'Just let it go.'

He would entrust the work to the expert.

With a relaxed mind, In-gong watched Felicia work. However, Felicia was on her knees before the anvil and was sweating while interpreting the characters.

"Okay, I understand. I understand!"

Felicia stood up after deciphering the letters on the anvil and told everyone,

"Everyone has to come inside the circle of the stone statues. Delia, Katuin... and Caitlin?"

She called out, but her last word was filled with hesitation and anxiety. Caitlin just laughed and replied,

"Yes, Unni."

Felicia smiled at the friendly reply. She gave the three people a cheerful look.

"Do you see the discs on the ground? Delia and Katuin will stand on the ones in the 3

o'clock and 6 o'clock direction, respectively. I will stand at the 12 o'clock direction and Caitlin at the 9 o'clock direction."

"Ah, then what about us?"

In-gong, Carack and Seira were left over, so Felicia had to think about what to do with them.

"Just stand in the right place. Don't step on the discs."

Everyone else was surplus manpower. In-gong stayed near Felicia and Caitlin while Carack and Seira were also in the vicinity.

Felicia turned to them and said.

"Okay, insert magic power one by one in the clockwise direction. Got it?"

"I understand."

"Yes, your Highness."

"Yes."

Delia, Katuin and Caitlin replied.

Felicia breathed out like she was trying to relax and injected magic power into the plate. Then the plate and altar glowed with a gentle light.

The signs were good so everyone acted quickly. Delia, Katuin and then Caitlin poured in their magic power, causing a bright light as well as a mechanical sound.

"Ohh, the altar is rising!"

The moment that Carack cried out. An enormous amount of light enveloped the party.



# Chapter 33

## Awakening #8

The sky was ablaze.

It was neither day nor night and there was an enormous presence under the red sky.

It was a black dragon.

Instead of scales, steel and rocks covered its body. Red and yellow lava was flowing endlessly along the cracks in the steel and rocks.

The wyrm Enkidu.

A great dragon that had been born in lava.

In front of him, In-gong was only a small presence. It was impossible for him to even see all of Enkidu's body.

Enkidu was on top of the Jishuka Mountains and the steel and rocks made him seem like one with the mountains.

At the feet of the Great Enkidu, there were a number of dwarf treasure keepers. Behind them, paying homage in their own way, there were the swamp mammoths and many varieties of powerful chimeras

They all had the same mission:

Protect the Great Enkidu.

They formed a barrier between the Demon World and Human World.

Enkidu opened his mouth slowly and his voice resonated through the Jishuka Mountains. The sound was so loud that In-gong reflexively blocked his ears. Then out of nowhere, he was swept away by lava.

"Heok!"

In-gong sat up and almost vomited. His whole body was drenched in sweat like he had fallen into water.

In-gong continued to breathe rapidly. He could hear his heart pounding wildly.

It was a dream. Whether it was a fantasy or something else, it wasn't reality.

A black dragon - it was probably the wyrm, Enkidu.

In Knight Saga, he had been one of the six elder dragons that were said to have the power of a god.

He wasn't in the Demon World anymore. He had only mentioned in Knight Saga and never appeared directly. So, he may already be dead.

In-gong covered his face with both hands and took a deep breath. He seemed to be calm.

"Okay."

In-gong muttered, removed his hands and got up. Then he saw Carack who wasn't moving. However, he wasn't dead. He had simply lost consciousness.

"Carack! Carack!"

In-gong called out Carack's name while shaking him wildly. Then he hit Carack's cheek a few times.

"Uh...uh..."

Just like In-gong, he finally regained consciousness. In-gong sighed with relief then stepped forward again when he saw the other side.

"Caitlin noona! Are you okay? Wake up!"

In-gong cautiously held Caitlin's upper body, which had fallen on the altar, and called

her name repeatedly. He shook her shoulders a few times before she reacted like Carack.

“Oh... Shutra?”

Her voice sounded like someone who had just woken up from a deep sleep.

"Do you feel okay?"

“Uh... Yes.”

Caitlin nodded before sitting up. In-gong didn't question Caitlin anymore and looked around. As expected, everyone around the altar was in a collapsed state.

"Caitlin noona, I will wake up Felicia noona."

“Eung, yes.”

Caitlin responded while pressing her hand to her temple like she was dizzy. In-gong stepped over Carack's legs and approached Felicia.

“Noona, Felicia noona!”

He knew it wasn't a dangerous condition after experiencing it twice already. Therefore, In-gong just lightly tapped Felicia's cheek. Her response was much faster than Caitlin's.

"Heok!"

Felicia sat up and took a deep breath. Just like In-gong, she was covered in sweat.

“Are you okay?”

"Uh, I'm okay. Yes, yes. There is something I need to check. I have to check it."

At first, she sounded sleepy but her voice and eyes became clear by the end.

Felicia grabbed In-gong's arm and asked,

"Shutra, did you see Enkidu? A huge black dragon covered in lava?!"

"Uh, I saw him."

After In-gong replied, Felicia turned and asked Caitlin who was waking Seira up.

"Caitlin, you?"

"I saw him."

"Me too."

The last to answer was Carack. Felicia made a bright expression and shook her fist.

"Okay, no problem. It is the same as the records. I was a little surprised because it was more abrupt than I expected, but it is just the procedure. Now, I just need to use the anvil."

It was like Felicia was talking to herself, not anyone else.

Felicia got up slowly from where she was sitting. In-gong turned to Felicia and asked,

"Then, is it all over now?"

"Yes, I can control the anvil. Don't you believe in Noona?"

Felicia replied playfully as she stood up using her recovered strength.

In the meantime, Caitlin and Carack had woken up Seira, Delia and Katuin. When In-gong asked, all three of them had seen Enkidu.

Felicia walked over to the anvil and placed both hands on it.

"Everybody hold on to something! I will be using the anvil now!"

In-gong grabbed the dwarf statue nearby, while the others also held onto a dwarf statue or a portion of the altar.

After confirming that everyone was in place, Felicia poured magic power directly into

the anvil. At this time, not only the anvil, but the whole room started shaking. The altar rose up slowly as the ceiling split apart and light poured in.

“Light? Perhaps?”

Seira frowned at the sudden sunlight and exclaimed.

It was late at night when the party had entered the room. Even if the ceiling split open, it should be moonlight streaming in, not sunlight.

However, the sunlight was real. In-gong checked the clock next to the mini-map and was shocked.

‘Oh, my god. It has been 12 hours?’

In the meantime, the altar continued to ascend and rose through the ceiling.

Despite the blue light coming from the altar and the strong wings, Felicia continued chanting a spell with both hands on the anvil. Usually, it wouldn’t be hard, but now, sweat was pouring along her forehead and neck.

However, the result was clear. Light emerged from the discs around the altar.

"The expedition!"

Carack shouted with amazement. Each window of light showed the expedition army fighting the Red Lightning tribe. It was like he was watching an internet broadcast.

Just like yesterday, the expedition army was struggling. The swamp mammoths nestled among the Red Lightning tribe launched their powerful magic and the lizardmen devastated the orcs.

They seemed to be watching the battlefield from the viewpoint of the swamp mammoths.

In-gong’s party had to use them somehow. In-gong looked hurriedly at Felicia while Caitlin screamed,

“Felicia unni!”

“Royal Princess!”

Delia and Katuin shrieked.

The state of Felicia, who was controlling the base, wasn't normal. Her whole body was trembling and blood was coming from her nose and ears. Despite that, Felicia couldn't take her hands off the anvil. It seemed like the anvil was stealing her magic power, rather than it being injected.

“We have to control the anvil! Help the Royal Princess!”

Delia shouted towards In-gong and Caitlin before putting her hands on the anvil along with Katuin. However, the same thing happened to Delia and Katuin.

As Delia and Katuin's magic power was devoured by the anvil, more light and wind appeared. Caitlin and In-gong didn't hesitate to reach out towards the anvil.

Caitlin and In-gong's hands touched it at the same time...

And his consciousness became connected to something else. In-gong could feel Felicia, Caitlin and everyone else through the anvil before he started screaming.

It felt like all the magic power in his body was being torn out. A fierce swirl of magic power shredded In-gong's consciousness.

"Prince!"

Carack shouted loudly as blood poured from In-gong's nose and ears, but In-gong didn't hear it.

In-gong's spirit was in the anvil. Felicia and Caitlin screamed from the swirling magic power, while Delia and Katuin had already lost consciousness and didn't make a sound.

The magic power of the wyrm Enkidu.

His test to see if there were any unauthorized people!

It was overwhelming. It was a huge force that couldn't be resisted. So, it was natural that Felicia couldn't control it alone.

However, In-gong wasn't broken. Despite being torn by the swirl of magic power, he roared and took one step forward.

It was because a voice he heard from the depths of his soul sustained him.

The golden-crowned female with white hair. Her one red eye and one blue eye shone as she spoke,

'Conquest!'

In-gong roared once again. Despite the pained screams of Caitlin and Felicia, they hadn't collapsed. In-gong gathered their magic power and willpower, and poured them into the center of the whirlpool.

Conquest.

It was the right to rule. The power of a king to conquer and subjugate!

The swirl of magic power scattered at once. Enkidu's magic power released In-gong from the altar.

"Prince! Prince!"

He heard Carack's voice. In-gong's eyes opened and he saw Caitlin and Felicia gasping. Delia and Katuin were still unconscious.

Felicia leaned against the anvil and stood up. She hadn't lost consciousness, so she knew what In-gong had done. With a bitter smile, she chanted the last spell.

A hammer was paired with the anvil.

A hammer made of Enkidu's magic power appeared in In-gong's hands.

In-gong glanced at Felicia who nodded.

"Do it."

Enkidu's magic power told him what to do.

Conquest didn't stay still either.

It whispered to In-gong about how to conquer, dominate and use the Thunder Light Anvil.

First of all, he had to dominate the swamp mammoths.

In-gong struck the anvil with a hammer made of magic power.



# Chapter 34

## Entry

The hammer hit the anvil.

The Thunder Light Anvil, that had been sleeping for thousands of years, woke up with a loud roar.

There was a surge of magic power. The wave roared through the atmosphere and woke up the servants of the Great Enkidu that had been sleeping for many years.

They opened their eyes and obeyed.

The trivial magic of the orc shamans that had been deceiving the eyes and ears of the swamp mammoths didn't last. The swamp mammoths were released from the delusions and obeyed the right command.

The first one who noticed was Vandal.

He wielded metal bars in both hands and smashed them against an orc's bones. Vandal recognized it. He wasn't a magician but he sensed it instinctively.

At this moment, the flow of the battlefield was changing.

There was no logic or rationale to it. Vandal just felt it and acted without hesitation.

"Ararararai!"

The ogre's unique battle cry caught the attention of everyone in the vicinity. Vandal, who had been acting as a barrier to protect his allies, became a tank. He trampled on the orcs of the Red Lightning tribe and rushed.

"Ararararai!"

"Ararararai!"

Vandal's ogre warriors acted in the same manner. The ogre warriors rushing forward destroyed the entire formation of the expedition army, but they didn't hesitate to run after Vandal.

The Red Lightning tribe warriors at the front were confused by the sudden rush. However, Yakuzan smiled from where he was observing in the rear. Vandal's charge was like a fleeting moment. Due to the broken formation, the damage to the expedition would only become larger.

However, Yakuzan's judgement was wrong. The swamp mammoths started trampling on the Red Lightning tribe instead of the expedition army. A few of them rolled over on the ground and crushed dozens of orcs.

Confusion spread like wildfire. There was a crack in the formation of the Red Lightning tribe.

Vandal plunged in through the gap and the explosive rush of the ogre warriors split the battlefield in half.

Now, even the soldiers felt it. Chris, whose body was tired and bloody, looked up towards the sky and shouted,

"The prince and princesses did it!"

It was enough. Chris, who grasped the situation, smiled like a demon. He gave a signal to the lycanthropes.

"Bushiberyeo!"

More than one hundred lycanthropes roared in unison and a magic blessing appeared over the heads of the expedition army.

It was magic contained in the Thunder Light Spear.

The magic spread through the swamp mammoths and aroused the strength of courage of the expedition army. The orcs belonging to the expedition force forgot their fatigue, suffering and fear.

It was the exact opposite situation for the Red Lightning tribe as a curse of confusion spread over them. Fear grabbed onto their feet and the unbearable sense of defeat made them unable to extend their weapons. The chiefs yelled at them but it was no use.

An army that had lost its enthusiasm was just a set of individuals. The confused and frightened Red Lightning tribe panicked and crumbled.

“We must flee!”

A shaman standing next to Yakuzan cried out urgently. As a magician, he could read the flow of mana from the swamp mammoths. This situation absolutely wasn't a coincidence. It was something that someone created.

This battle couldn't be won. The situation was so confusing that even a retreat couldn't be done properly. The only thing left was the annihilation of the Red Lightning tribe.

So, they had to give up. They had to run away, even at the expense of this battle.

"Tribe Chief must live! If Tribe Chief survives, we can stand up again!"

Yakuzan understood what the shaman was saying. He knew that fleeing was the best choice but he also knew that he couldn't.

He turned and looked at the center of the battlefield. The orcs of the Red Lightning tribe were being trampled on.

“Ya-ku-zan-!”

The bodies of the shamans shook involuntarily at the thunderous shout. Yakuzan stared straight into Vandal's face. There were still more than a hundred warriors between Vandal and Yakuzan but that was meaningless.

"It seems like it is up to here."

Yakuzan laughed hysterically. The chief of the Red Lightning tribe raised the great iron sword that had been his lifetime companion.

"Tribe Chief?"

Yakuzan didn't respond to the call of the shaman. Vandal laughed wildly as he kept narrowing the distance.

"It is over."

In-gong said with a sigh. He could see the battlefield through the eyes of the swamp mammoths thanks to the anvil.

Vandal had killed Yakuzan, the leader of the Red Lightning tribe. Kairam and a few chiefs of the Red Lightning tribe still lived but they couldn't become Yakuzan.

Yakuzan's death broke the heart of the Red Lightning tribe. The orcs gave up fighting and either escaped or surrendered. The lizardmen, who had entered the battle as mercenaries in the first place, left early and traces of them couldn't be seen on the battlefield.

In-gong put the hammer down as Chris, who was bathed in the blood of the orcs, shouted with victory. His gaze moved naturally to the two people leaning on the anvil.

"We won."

Felicia laughed despite her nosebleed. Caitlin, whose cheek was pressed against the anvil, spoke with a blank expression.

"We won."

It seemed like she wanted to express her feelings more intensely but her strength was so weak that her shoulders sank. In fact, Caitlin needed to lean on the anvil. It wasn't a choice she'd made.

Felicia was in a better condition and she spoke after wiping the blood off her face.

"Shutra, put the swamp mammoths to sleep for now."

Currently, Shutra was the only one who could use the Thunder Light Anvil to control the swamp mammoths. They had caused trouble to the expedition army, so it was a good idea to put them to sleep for now.

However, In-gong didn't raise the hammer again.

"I already did it. That was the last command that I gave."

"Okay, then I will be able to sleep for the next few hours."

"Huh?"

Instead of answering, Felicia turned her gaze toward Caitlin. She tried to grab Caitlin's shoulder but her shoulders were shaking and she couldn't even lift it.

"It is too much. We'll speak later. Good night."

Felicia spoke to Caitlin, who was behind her, before falling unconscious. Caitlin glanced from Felicia toward In-gong.

"Sorry."

Caitlin said one word before closing her eyes as well.

'I'm sorry.'

In-gong remained silent. Now that the tension was released, the fatigue overcame him and he found it hard to keep his eyes open.

'I should stretch out.'

The moment that In-gong thought so...

[Your level has risen.]  
[Your level has risen.]

"Huh?"

In-gong made a surprised sound as he levelled up. White light shone around him and his stamina and strength, that had been exhausted by the Thunder Light Anvil, quickly recovered.

‘Is this the achievement experience?’

There were occasions in Knight Saga when finding artifacts or achievements would give experience.

‘Well, at first I levelled up just by running.’

The anvil was an artifact belonging to Enkidu, one of the six elder dragons, so it was natural to get a lot of experience.

He had gained one level during the battle they had lost, so In-gong was now level 13. However, this wasn’t the end.

[The level of Conquest has risen.]

“What?”

In-gong cried out unintentionally and hastily activated his skills window. The level really had increased.

[Conquest Lv2]  
[Below the King’s Flag Lv2]  
[The King's Knights Lv1]

‘The level of Below the King’s Flag also rose. What is the effect? Is the effect stronger? Maybe the number of people I can buff has increased.’

He wanted to try it out right now. However, there was something more important than that.

The King's Knights Lv1.

There was also a skill. It wasn’t a passive skill like the skills related to Protagonist Correction. It was an active skill like Below the King’s Flag.

‘Just by the name... Is it a summoning skill?’

He briefly saw knights in shining armour flashing in front of him.

After the brief delusion, In-gong sighed and leaned against the anvil. Thanks to the level up effect, both his physical strength and magic power had been restored. However, the mental fatigue still remained. It felt like when he had used Below the King's Flag.

'Punishment, obedience, governance.'

It was the golden-crowned female with white hair.

This time he didn't simply see her. It was just for a moment but they shared senses.

It was probably the influence of Conquest's level.

Who was she? Was she In-gong's power of Conquest itself?

His head, that had become lighter due to the level up effect, started becoming heavy again. His eyes could barely stay open any longer and he was on the verge of collapsing.

This was his limit. In-gong's body slumped slightly and he turned to look at Carack.

"Carack."

"Prince! Did you see? We won!"

Carack exclaimed as he stared up at the windows of light showing the image of the expedition army. In-gong sat down in front of the anvil.

"Please."

And he fainted. He was knocked out fast enough to be called a skill.

"Heok? Prince? Prince?"

The confused Carack rushed over to In-gong but he had already fainted. Seira approached Carack and said,

"Warrior Carack, I will take care of the princesses. You should deal with the prince and the dark elves."

Delia and Katuin were also collapsed around the anvil. Carack and Seira were the only ones who hadn't fainted.

"Understood."

Carack answered quickly and hugged In-gong.

The white-haired woman was smiling softly.

Her red and blue eyes stared at In-gong as she whispered.

"Conquest Knight, you are my-"

She kept speaking but her voice was out of reach. The white woman licked her lips and smiled again.

It wasn't the time yet.

Darkness twisted around the white woman.

"Oh, Prince. Have you regained consciousness?"

As soon as he opened his eyes, he heard Carack's voice above him. Just like most people, In-gong sat up and rubbed his eyes.

"Carack."

"Drink some water."

Carack extended a canteen filled with cold water. He took a sip and asked,

"My sisters?"

"They are next to each other."

Carack grinned and pointed to an area. Caitlin and Felicia were lying side by side.



'Did I wake up first?'

He thought that Caitlin, the most physically superior, would be the first to wake up.

'Ah, the level up effect.'

It was probably because his level had gone up. In-gong's body had been restored, so it was normal for him to wake up first.

'It has only been two hours.'

In-gong looked away from the mini-map and towards Caitlin and Felicia. Seira was sitting next to them and she said to him,

"The princesses seem to be tired. They need to take a break for a while."

"The dark elves are in a similar state. Still, there doesn't seem to be any risk to their lives."

Carack pointed to the dark elves lying on In-gong's left side. Just like Carack said, their lives weren't at risk but they were making pained expressions.

Anyway, no one had died. The mission had been completed successfully.

"You have obtained a decisive victory. Congratulations."

Seira recognized In-gong's merits. Carack glanced at him and imitated her words.

"Congratulations."

"Thank you. It is also thanks to Caitlin noona and Felicia noona."

Seira smiled at his reply. She seemed more agreeable after hearing his words about Caitlin.

In-gong then spoke to Carack,

"It was also thanks to you."

"Hoho, you know it already."

Carack laughed.

Delia and Katuin would have frowned at Carack's rudeness, but Seira was already accustomed to orcs. She spoke in a slightly more friendly tone than before.

"It seems like more time is required for the princesses to wake up. Prince should take a break as well."

Caitlin and Felicia seemed like they would be unconscious for three or four more hours, so In-gong nodded.

"Yes, yes... Wait a minute."

"Huh?"

Instead of answering, In-gong looked around. The light from the Thunder Light Anvil had disappeared and there was a door beyond it.

'This place is a ruin.'

It was a ruin related to the wyrm, Enkidu. When he had arrived here while playing the game, he had skipped the intermediate process, so there was no change in the room.

Exploring the ruins.

It wasn't easy. There were various traps and powerful guardians.

'But what if I am the ruler?'

The dungeon was originally intended to defend the anvil and In-gong controlled the anvil.

"Carack, carry the bag and follow me."

"Huh? Prince?"

In-gong didn't reply to Carack and got up. He was looking at the door beyond the altar.

# Chapter 35

## Entry #2

Ruins were discovered in Knight Saga for a reason.

Reporting useful ruins to the Demon King's Palace would help someone to gain publicity and the appropriate rewards.

The most important thing for the Demon King's children was that it was a system that allowed them to gain achievements.

Of course, depending on the type and nature of the ruins, privatization could sometimes be beneficial. However, the privatization of ruins was accompanied by considerable risks. If the Demon King's Palace discovered it, not only would a great deal of achievements be removed but penalties such as fines and imprisonment would be received.

'I've experienced it before in the game.'

However, the Demon King's Palace didn't just maintain a tight hold. They didn't just treat the discovery of ruins harshly.

In general, those who discovered a ruin would be able to keep some of the relics, depending on the size.

'Of course, there are slightly more informal procedures.'

The hidden ruins and relics differed in their difficulties.

It was clear that the discovery of the Thunder Light Anvil was a great achievement. Even though it would be divided between three children of the Demon King, he was sure that the achievement would be great.

However, it was up to there. It was impossible to privatize the Thunder Light Anvil.

The Thunder Light Anvil was tied to these ruins. If the anvil was separated and installed elsewhere, it wouldn't be able to give off the same performance.

'It can't be helped.'

It was a fact he had learnt after controlling the anvil. The anvil was powered by the enchantments left behind by the wurm, Enkidu, and the enormous magic power flowing underneath the ruins. It was why the dwarves had left without the anvil.

'But can I leave empty handed?'

He felt sorry towards Caitlin and Felicia but they were sleeping right now, so it was a perfect opportunity to obtain relics.

'The ones I can use will go in the inventory, while the miscellaneous items will be put in Carack's bag.'

There was no water left, so his excuse was perfect.

'Sorry.'

In-gong apologized to Caitlin and Felicia in his mind, then he entered the second room with Carack.

The second room was much bigger than the one with the anvil. The ceiling was higher and it seemed to be 10 metres wide.

"Wow, what a terrific monster!"

Carack acted like a little child as he pointed excitedly to a monster in the middle of the room.

In-gong was puzzled.

'Oh, my god. It is an arc golem! Look at that shape!'

A monster with the head and wings of a eagle and the body of a lion. The monster in front of him seemed to be a griffon covered in armour.

If In-gong's eyes weren't mistaken, the monster in front of him was obviously an arc golem among the dungeon guards.

'Could we possibly face that head on?'

If it was the Caitlin at the time of the lycanthrope subjugation, it might be possible. However, right now, she was weaker.

'Felicia also doesn't seem to be a combat magician.'

Although she was a capable magician, not every capable magician was a combat one.

The magic that Felicia had shown on this expedition had mainly been indirect magic, such as supporting allies or changing the environment of the battlefield.

Carack asked In-gong a question while staring at the arc golem which stood still a statue.

"Prince, it won't move, right? It won't suddenly get up and attack us, right?"

"It's okay, I am in charge of this ruin now."

It was okay since he had the acknowledgment of the Thunder Light Anvil. In the eyes of the arc golem, In-gong and Carack were treasure keepers.

In-gong examined the room instead of the arc golem and said,

"We need to find a warehouse or arsenal. This is basically a fortress, so it is unlikely to have a treasure trove."

Additionally, it was highly likely that the arsenal or warehouse was connected to this room or the next room. This was the safest place in the ruins.

Carack nodded at In-gong's words.

"I'm sure that the anvil in that room is the best treasure."

The purpose of this ruin was to defend the Thunder Light Anvil. As always, Carack's understanding was quick.

There were no passages in the room with the arc golem, so In-gong moved to the next room. This time, it was a room with many doors.

'I think there was some remodeling done.'

It was quite different from the dungeon he remembered from when he played Locke.

'Well, I was busy destroying it at the time.'

After he had destroyed the anvil, the mountain had collapsed and buried the dungeon.

"Carack, I'll investigate this side, so take the doors on the opposite side."

"Understo... Ooh! Look at this!"

As soon as In-gong spoke, Carack shouted loudly after opening the nearest door. Once In-gong approached, he saw a room full of weapons and armour.

'Perhaps Carack is the protagonist?'

In-gong laughed inwardly as he entered the armoury with Carack. The item that greatly impressed Carack was the large armour in the middle of the armoury.

"Prince, isn't this really cool? It looks really robust."

Even In-gong was forced to admire the remarkable armour. The chestplate was decorated with stylish dragons while dragon wings were attached to the shoulders like decorations. It was obviously a magic armour because he could feel the magic power coming from it.

'Is it for an orc mercenary?'

No matter how he looked at it, the size showed it wasn't for a dwarf. It seemed like only someone Carack's size would be able to fit into it.

'It is likely a mass production item.'

It was a mass production item made by Enkidu's treasure keepers. It couldn't be

compared to the armour that Carack was wearing now.

In-gong looked up and down and examined the armour using the authority of the anvil's ruler. There weren't any curses or harmful magic.

"Carack, do you want it?"

Carack's eyes shone at In-gong's proposal. He was speechless before finally opening his mouth.

"R-really? I can really have this?"

"Yeah, it is too big for me anyway."

Furthermore, Carack was his precious subordinate number one. Carack becoming stronger was like In-gong being stronger.

"Thank you. I really thank you, Prince."

Carack immediately rushed over to the armour and tried it on. In-gong looked at the scene with a warm gaze before turning his attention elsewhere.

There were strangely empty places at various points in the armoury. When the treasure keepers left the dungeon, the dwarves had taken the dwarf equipment.

'Well, the dwarf size isn't right for me anyway.'

In-gong thought it was good and started to enter things into his inventory. There was no reason to hesitate because they were treasures that the dwarves had left behind.

'One day, I will use them.'

The dwarfs had left them behind with the Thunder Light Anvil, so they probably didn't play a big role. In-gong would decide whether to use the items, give them to his subordinates or sell them.

In-gong swept up the swords, shields and axes on the shelves before looking at the chests on the ground. Most of them were empty but some contained old gold coins.



‘Are these ancient gold coins?’

The value of an antique gold coin was significant. In-gong filled his inventory without thinking.

After dozens of minutes. In-gong suddenly felt uncomfortable as he looked at the chests.

‘This feeling is?’

Despite clearing the shelves and chests in the room, he felt like he had missed something.

What was it? What did he miss?

‘My nerves are irritated.’

His gaze went to a chest in the middle. It wasn’t because of anything special. It was just a feeling. However, it was a feeling that absolutely couldn’t be ignored.

In-gong stretched out his hand unknowingly and touched the chest. His hand touched something.

‘Heok, a secret device?’

He could feel a catch under his hands. In-gong swallowed his saliva and pressed the device.

‘This is what I felt. As expected of Protagonist Correction!’

He heard the familiar sound of a machine and the wall behind the chest opened. It was a secret place to hide the really important things.

"Prince?"

Carack was surprised by the sudden machine noise and came to In-gong while only half clad in the armour. However, In-gong didn’t look at Carack. In the middle of the secret place, a steel gauntlet were floating silently.

"Enchanted by Enkidu... Earth Quaker."

The name popped into his head the moment he saw it.

It came to the top of his arms and resembled the wyrm Enkidu. The steel plates were like the scales of a dragon while the arm was sculpted like a dragon head.

"Oh... it looks awesome."

Carack muttered with a blank expression. Breathing heavily, In-gong reached out slowly to grab the gauntlet.

[Your level is not high enough.]  
[Your magic power is not high enough.]  
[Your mental power is not high enough.]  
[Your strength is not high enough.]  
[Your persistence is not high enough.]

Numerous sentences popped into his head the moment his hand touched it. It was a powerful magical artifact that was impossible for In-gong's current state to use.

However-

[Earth Quaker has recognized you as its owner.]  
[Earth Quaker's user has changed to 'Shutra.']

In-gong found Earth Quaker. It accepted the one who conquered the Thunder Light Anvil as its master.

A yellow light shone and the gauntlet was disassembled. He was surprised to see that it reformed around In-gong's right arm. It was a perfect fit.

"Did you see? It acknowledged Prince as its master!"

[Strength has increased by 10.]

[Magic Power has increased by 10.]

[Persistence has increased by 10.]

Some of Earth Quaker's features were activated. In-gong formed a tight fist and was thrilled at the power he felt at his fingertips.

'Wait for awhile. I will train hard to restore your original features.'

It would probably be a S rank weapon if all its original functions were working. He knew this because he had felt Enkidu's magic power when using the anvil.

'Permission is needed.'

It seemed like the dwarves had known this and left Earth Quaker behind. If In-gong hadn't dominated the Thunder Light Anvil, he wouldn't have obtained the Earth Quaker.

In-gong dismantled the gauntlet and put it in his inventory. He then turned around and told Carack,

"Carack, I have something to say."

"Prince... Is it to keep the mysterious magic where you take things a secret?"

Carack said with a smile. Indeed, a genius orc. He had noticed In-gong's intentions. In-gong nodded with a pleased expression.

"Yes. Keep it a secret from my sisters too."

"Understood. I am proud to serve Prince. I will keep it a secret until the knife is at my neck."

He felt a little uneasy but it was realistic.

'Come to think of it.'

He had forgotten about it until he was reminded of it due to Carack.

‘The King's Knights.’

The new skill he had gained when the level of Conquest had increased.

What type of skill was it? Was it a summoning skill as expected?

‘I will know soon.’

It was a saying that a picture was worth a thousand words.

In-gong breathed in lightly and declared,

“The King's Knights.”

The new power of Conquest was activated at In-gong’s fingertips.

# Chapter 36

## Entry #3

[The King's Knights Lv1]

[A group of knights will be generated. Please wait a moment.]

A woman's voice rang in his head as he activated the skill. In-gong's eyes widened.

'A group of knights will be created? Perhaps this is similar to a guild creation?'

A window of light stretched out in front of him after the order of knights was completed.

[The King's Knights Lv1]

[Knight Leader: - ]

[Knight Personnel: 0/2]

[Knight Skills Lv1]

[Knights Protection Lv1: Health of the knights will increase by 5%]

[Nurtured Knights]

[ - ]

[Special Skill]

[Call Lv1: -You can summon the leader of the knights. (Once every three days)]

'Ohhh?'

It was similar to an online game guild. No, it was much better.

'The knight skill isn't a problem.'

The members of the group of knights would have their health increased by 5%. It was definitely a good option. It was still level one, so the effect would definitely get better. There was a possibility that new options would be added.

However, there was something else that caught In-gong's eye.

The nurtured knights.

There wasn't a detailed explanation but he could guess by the name.

Nurturing the knights... He could make them stronger!

'Call is also amazing.'

It could only be used once every three days, but there was unlimited potential in being able to call the leader of the knights.

'If the number increases when it levels up, I might be able to summon general-level knights.'

In-gong's excitement grew as his imagination spread. However, Carack couldn't see the window of light and he thought In-gong was crazy.

In-gong caught the gaze of his impudent subordinate number one. He then coughed and turned to face Carack.

"Carack, there is something I want to suggest."

"What is it?"

Carack asked with wide eyes. In-gong felt strangely shy and spoke after a little bit.

"You- Would you like to keep moving forward with me?"

"Uh... are you asking me to be your direct subordinate? Just like those women called Seira and Delia?"

"That's right. If you want to, I will ask Chris hyung if I can keep you."

In fact, it was possible if he just asked Chris. In-gong had built up quite a lot of merits, so he could do as he wanted.

However, In-gong wanted to respect Carack's will as much as possible. It was a

relationship that needed to be maintained in the future.

‘Although, what will happen if he refuses?’

In-gong stared at Carack with uneasy eyes. Carack scratched his chin and replied,

"Well, okay. I like Prince as well."

It was fortunate that he agreed. In-gong laughed and told Carack,

"Okay, then fall to your knees. A simple ceremony is needed."

In order to use The King's Knights skill properly, it was necessary to ‘appoint’ a knight. Just like when he took control of the Thunder Light Anvil, the method popped into his head.

Carack fell to his knees in front of In-gong without any complaints. In-gong took out a dwarf sword from the inventory.

"Uh, how can I rebel against Prince?"

Carack leaned back as In-gong suddenly pulled out a short sword. In-gong clicked his tongue and approached Carack.

"Don't worry. I am going to make you a knight. Just stay calm and cool."

"Uhh, I will trust you."

Carack was as gentle as a sheep. He kneeled down but he wasn't that much shorter than In-gong. In-gong raised the sword to each shoulder and said,

"The mighty orc warrior Carack, I appoint you as my knight."

It was a simple ceremony but the effect was obvious. As soon as he finished speaking, a white light wrapped around Carack's body.

"Ohhh?"

It was a little different from Below the King's Flag. The light was much larger and

brighter.

[The King's Knights Lv1]  
[Knight Leader: Carack]  
[Knight Personnel: 1/2]  
[Knights' Personal Information]  
[Carack Lv24 (Rank: Soldier)]  
[Nurtured Knights]  
[Carack Lv24 (Rank: Soldier)]

There was only one person, so appointing him to a position wasn't necessary. In-gong smiled happily at the Nurtured Knights section.

'Is this achievement experience?'

If a certain amount of achievements were consumed, a person's stats could be raised or new skills could be obtained. Indeed, it was called a king's reward.

In-gong formed tight fists as he thought of the rewards he could get from the achievements. He understood why there was the rank of 'soldier' next to Carack's name.

Once he reached a certain level, his rank would be promoted. As far as chess was concerned, the pieces could be promoted through special rules (such as a pawn being upgraded to a queen or knight).

'Good, very good.'

The most powerful orc he had seen in Knight Saga was the Orc Emperor, the pinnacle of all orcs. In-gong pictured Carack standing side by side with the Orc Emperor.

"Excuse me, Prince. Is everything alright?"

Carack's voice pulled In-gong back to reality. In-gong closed all the skill windows and nodded.

"Yes, for now."



“Umm, it is a strange feeling. I was enveloped in a white light and could only think of my loyalty to Prince.”

'That's great.'

The words weren't bad.

'I should increase the personnel in the group of knights quickly. Knights are preferred.'

In-gong was reminded of Caitlin for a moment but quickly shook his head. The position would be like Seira and Delia.

'In fact, the most attractive one is Vandal.'

He had obtained Vandal when playing Zephyr.

Something he wanted to put his hands on Vandal again.

'Yes, someday.'

In-gong's resolution hardened after obtaining Carack. Thanks to discovering the armoury straight away, not much time had passed. Caitlin and Felicia would be sleeping for a while, so it was now time to look around the dungeon.

"Let's go to the next room."

Carack followed In-gong without saying anything.

Unfortunately, he didn't find anything good in the other rooms. Moreover, he needed to leave a share for Caitlin and Felicia, so In-gong only took a few dwarf weapons and armour, as well as Earth Quaker.

'Will it be more expensive after thousands of years?'

Of course, that was under the premise that they weren't damaged.

Once In-gong and Carack returned, Seira, who had been looking after Felicia and Caitlin, got up.

“You’ve come back? I was worried.”

"Uh, thank you. There wasn't anything special."

Seira's reaction was a little surprising, but he always welcomed it from a beauty.

‘Wait, she was worried about something else?’

Seira's gaze was directed towards the dwarf armour that Carack was wearing. In-gong realized the reason behind the scene.

‘Ah, that's it.’

Caitlin was part of the group that discovered this ruin. In other words, some of the finds inside the ruin belonged to Caitlin.

‘If I take too much, Caitlin will lose her share.’

He felt a little bit of regret, but he also felt good. Seira was truly loyal to Caitlin.

‘I wish for Carack to be the same.’

Following that thought, In-gong's gaze moved to Carack's almost empty bag.

"There was nothing surprising. There is enough for my noonas. So I took this armour from the armoury."

"You found the armoury?"

Seira's face became animated. In-gong grinned and nodded.

"Yes, there were many things."

Due to In-gong's conscience, he didn't collect all the equipment in the armoury. He left 30% of the total amount.

'Umm, it is a small prick.'

However, now wasn't the time to be brazen. In-gong knocked on the armour that

Carack was wearing and said.

"This armour will be part of my share in the official distribution. I will give it to Carack."

"You will give it to Carack?"

"Yes, he is my number one subordinate."

After In-gong's words, Seira stared at Carack with a little bit of envy. Carack just accepted Seira's glance with a smile.

"Anyway... How is the situation with the two of them?"

"Their stamina is depleted, so they need to rest a little bit longer. We will stay here today and leave early tomorrow morning."

Anyway, the Red Lightning tribe was already in a state of collapse. There was no reason for fugitives to run here, so it was a safe place.

"Okay, let's do so." The fight is already won, so there is no need to overdo it."

Chris would be worried but it was unavoidable.

'He already knows that we have succeeded.'

It was only a day or two, so he could wait that long.

"Prince, I will prepare the camp now."

Carack said while taking off the cumbersome armour. In-gong just nodded.

As expected, Felicia and Caitlin turned a blind eye to Carack's armour after waking up the next morning.

In fact, they weren't greedy over the artifacts in the ruin.

Just like in the dwarf cave, Caitlin wasn't worried about the merits and was more upset that she couldn't break the cliff. On the other hand, Felicia was focused on the anvil.

"I am sorry that there are only a few artifacts, but there are other things. There is a huge income, starting from the Thunder Light Anvil and the arc golem. This is really a great discovery!"

Caitlin's eyes shone.

'There is no need for me to worry.'

He felt full of energy like it was a spring day. So, In-gong decided to worry about Caitlin.

"Is your body okay?"

"Yes, I felt better after waking up. Shutra, what about you?"

"Me too."

The two people gazed at each other with warm expressions before being summoned by an excited Felicia on a phantom steed. In order to explore the ruin some more, Felicia didn't want to go back. However, she realized that she couldn't be foolish and had to return.

Due to the reversal of the losing battle, Chris and Vandal's base was filled with vitality.

As soon as he was informed that In-gong's party was approaching, Chris leapt out of the tent and welcomed them with open arms.

"Oh! These lucky people!"

Chris rushed over to the phantom steeds. The first thing he did was hug Caitlin then In-gong tightly.

'Keook!'

Due to the fact that Chris was big and powerful, the hug itself was close to torture. However, it was still quite a good feeling. Chris released In-gong and headed towards Felicia, but he stopped short just before hugging her.

"You did great work, Noonim."

Chris greeted her with both arms in an awkward position. Felicia, who shuddered like she was a little afraid he would hug her, grinned at him.

"Well, it was nothing because I am me."

She lifted her chin with the arrogance of a princess but her words weren't over yet.

"Shutra and Caitlin helped me a lot."

Although her voice was smaller than before, she definitely mentioned them.

'Her ears are red.'

In-gong just smiled while Caitlin alternated between looking at Chris and Felicia.

"It is good to see Prince and the Princesses."

Vandal simply summarized the situation and Felicia nodded in response. Chris laughed and spoke to In-gong and Caitlin.

"Take a break. I will take care of all the chores."

"What chores? Wasn't the Red Lightning tribe swept up?"

In a game, it was the end after defeating the enemy. However, reality was different. Moreover, there were still leaders in the Red Lightning tribe such as Kairam.

Chris replied to In-gong's question,

"There are still things like the swamp monsters. We have to negotiate with the lizardmen."

The lizardmen attacked the expedition along with the Red Lightning tribe. It couldn't be allowed to continue.

"It will take more than a fortnight to finish. Troops will then be stationed here to take care of the Red Lightning tribe."

Chris looked briefly at Vandal's army that would be left here and asked Felicia.

"Noonim, what will you do now?"

In-gong didn't understand the question but Felicia replied without hesitation.

"Well, shouldn't I follow you? I have to report the discovery and use of the anvil."

"I will be returning with Caitlin."

In-gong was now able to understand what the two of them were talking about.

The Red Lightning tribe mission has been accomplished. There was only one thing left to do:

Return to the castle to receive the rewards for the merits.

It was a return to the Demon King's Palace.

# Chapter 37

## Entry #4

Since Chris was responsible for the work with the lizardmen, In-gong was given his first period of free time since entering this world.

‘I should use this opportunity to train harder.’

There was nothing for In-gong to do right now, so he just had to become stronger.

In-gong had a fairly realistic personality.

He didn’t know if he had entered a game world or a world similar to a game. So, what was important?

The reason why he entered this world? Survey the people in this world? Explore the world similar to playing a game?

It was all wrong. The most important thing was to survive.

If he died, then everything else would be for nothing. He couldn’t do anything unless he lived.

Fortunately, In-gong’s method for survival was pretty simple:

Become strong.

The strong wouldn’t die easily. If he got stronger, his position would be reinforced. There was a lot of work he had to do.

In-gong had built up tremendous merits in the battle against the Red Lightning tribe. Due to the merits, In-gong would be able to put his hand on more strength.

There were different means to become strong and In-gong wanted to be stronger than everyone else.

'I need to make a plan.'

Until now, he had become stronger in a fairly random manner. He learnt many things but he didn't feel like an all-rounder.

'The basic things are Aura and Beast Authority.'

In-gong confirmed his course. It was due to the S rank Divine Beast Authority but also Earth Quaker. An S rank martial art and S rank hand weapon meeting each other was almost like destiny.

'My hidden card is Telekinesis.'

Although Telekinesis was still weak, he had a clear image of how to use it. Instead of directly attacking the enemy, he was going to use Telekinesis for other purposes.

'Unfortunately, magic will have to become secondary.'

Among the skills learnt, magic was the most numerous. The problem was that they were all level one.

'Even having many low level spells is enough to become a magician.'

He would just have a little bit of recovery magic and secondary magic. The magic could be sometimes used to strike the enemy.

That should be enough. Even though In-gong was a protagonist, it was better to concentrate on a few abilities in the early stages.

'There is Earth Quaker.'

In-gong looked around and after confirming there was no one in the tent, he activated the inventory. Earth Quaker was at the top of the inventory that contained dozens of objects.

'Does it have a built-in ability?'

With S rank armour and weapons, special things were often built into them.



The mighty sword that Locke used had a built-in 'Warrior's Field' that bombarded a wide range with Aura. When he played Zephyr, he liked picking Dragon Slayer and Dying Sleep which had 'Dragon Strike' and 'Curse of Death' built-in.

He had never found Earth Quaker in Knight Saga, so he didn't know what type of special weapon it was. However, there was a possibility it would have a built-in technology.

'Controlling the special skill... Earth Quaker can overcome a completely different level or ability.'

In-gong nodded quietly and closed his inventory window. He would have started practicing straight away but he had one more thing to think about.

'Returning to the Demon King's Palace.'

The fight against the Red Lightning tribe was, in a way, simple. He just had to fight the Red Lightning tribe. It was a simple battle without any compromises.

However, the Demon King's Palace was different.

'There are three factions in the Demon King's Castle.'

In-gong placed a cup of water, a dagger and a kettle on the table.

The cup of water represented the eldest son of the Demon King, 1st Prince Baikal Ragnaros.

The dagger was the second and worst prince, 2nd Prince Zephyr Ragnaros.

The kettle was the 4th Princess Anastasia Nekrion.

Baikal and Zephyr were brothers but they each led different factions. In a historical drama, it would be a fight between the elder son, with a legitimate claim, and the powerful second son. However, it had been somewhat different in Knight Saga.

The order of birth had been meaningless in the war to become the Demon King's successor. It was a structure where a pile of accomplishments were built and those

who were more capable would stand at the top.

Baikal and Zephyr had been equally capable. While they received the support of their mother's family, they had been proud that they had been able to stand alone above the other princes and princesses.

Dragon blood - they were draconians that inherited the blood of a great dragon species.

They had been the strongest among the families of the five queens.

'Of the two, I prefer Baikal.'

To distinguish between the two of them, Baikal was a dove and Zephyr was a hawk. Since he was the oldest son, Baikal had treated the other children of the Demon King as siblings rather than enemies. When he played Zephyr, the warm Baikal would host the tea parties that other children of the Demon King participated in.

Baikal had been relatively safe until Year 516 when the lycanthrope subjugation occurred. After that day, Zephyr's nature was exposed and the relationship between the brothers became the worst. Baikal had picked up his sword and maintained a moderate stance.

'He would have been great if only the draconians weren't enemies with the gandharva.'

One of the reasons why Shutra's clan, the gandharva, was small was due to the clash with the draconians.

The gandharva had been reduced by more than half, thus making them mortal enemies.

'I have to keep my distance from Zephyr.'

There was nothing good about getting close to him. Of the three factions, Zephyr had the second largest but that only lasted until the Day of Massacre. None of the Demon King's children under Zephyr survived.

'Anastasia... I don't know. Would it be better to just keep a distance?'

The 4th Princess Anastasia Nekrion.

Her mother, the 2nd Queen Titania Nekrion was queen of the nighthags.

(Nighthags/nightmares: a collective word for creatures that appear in dreams e.g. incubus and succubus)

Among the three major human desires, the nighthags were extremely involved in sexual desire while sleeping.

A gifted seductress - Anastasia was talented in enslavement and had many devoted servants under her. He wasn't sure when, but at some point in Knight Saga, Silvan and Felicia had joined her faction.

'If I manage to take Felicia and Silvan... there might be some friction.'

No, perhaps she would try to take In-gong from Chris.

'I have to maintain my spirit.'

She was a succubus; an innate seducer and enslaver. He wondered if he could hold out if she decided to seriously acquire him.

'Next are the Demon King's bastard children.'

In addition to the five queens, there were more than 10 concubines. Although Wang Geon of the Goryeo Dynasty had used this system to control his enemies, the concubines of the Demon King differed by species.

There were roughly 20 of them. Unlike the legitimate children of the Demon King, they didn't deserve to be called the successor of the Demon King. Therefore, they usually played support or management roles under the children of the Demon King.

The faces and names of the bastards In-gong encountered while playing Zephyr came to his head. There were those who truly adored Zephyr and those who In-gong liked. Yet, he had to get rid of all of them. It was a forced event, so In-gong had to curse every time he played it.

The dryad druid, Daphne.

The blood vampire knight, Silas.

The high elf archer, Selene.

‘Let’s see if I can gain as many of them as possible.’

Of course, he was currently Shutra, so he needed to accumulate more achievements to acquire them.

‘Anyway, this visit will be a scouting mission.’

In fact, he was apprehensive about what type of situation Shutra would be in. He didn’t have any information about Shutra’s situation in the Demon King’s Palace.

He didn’t know if there were any servants or maids in his home. No, was there even anyone to take care of Shutra?

‘This is like my debut in the Demon King’s Palace.’

He had quite a few merits, so his treatment would obviously improve. Additionally, perhaps the children of the Demon King and their followers would start paying attention to Shutra.

‘It’s okay, I’m not alone.’

He had Caitlin and Chris as strong allies and Felicia was likely to help him.

‘Okay, then shall I start training?’

In-gong cleared away the troublesome thoughts and took a deep breath. He started to earnestly train in Beast Authority.

The next morning.

Felicia headed to the ruins with some dark elves, stating that she would investigate a little bit before leaving. Meanwhile, Chris headed to the swamp for negotiations with the lizardmen.

Due to this, only In-gong, Vandal and Caitlin remained at the base.

Caitlin came to In-gong's tent early in the morning.

"Today, I will start the special training. Are you ready?"

Unlike her normal appearance, she was wearing really thick clothes.

"I am ready."

As In-gong replied confidently, Carack leaned towards Caitlin and said,

"Please do something. He does something else at night. It is his growing period, so I am worried about him not sleeping enough."

He was more like In-gong's nanny than his knight. 'Doing something else at night.' He didn't know what he would say if Caitlin misunderstood.

However, there was no need to worry. Caitlin stared at In-gong before nodding toward Carack.

"Don't worry. Starting from today, I will make sure he gets a good night's sleep."

Her expression said that she would force him if she had to.

Caitlin's words weren't a lie. The training wasn't a joke and she made sure that In-gong didn't train separately at night.

And on the 11th day of Caitlin's training:

[The level of Beast Authority has risen.]  
[The level of Aura has risen.]

Beast Authority and Aura had both become level five.

The moment that In-gong heard those words, Caitlin looked at him differently. She looked In-gong up and down and said.

"You learn really fast. This is..."

Caitlin, with a slightly clouded expression, looked around before whispering in In-gong's ears,

"Should I introduce you to Divine Beast Authority?"

The fact that In-gong was learning Divine Beast Authority was a secret.

In-gong's expression brightened as he exclaimed,

"Really?"

"Yes, I think it would be good to introduce you to Divine Beast Authority now. I am honestly really surprised. This is the first time I've seen someone learn so quickly."

Although In-gong's Aura level was too low to enter Divine Beast Authority, he had the minimum requirements necessary for the training course.

'Hehe, the protagonist body.'

Of course, it was also thanks to investing some skill points in Aura. Otherwise, In-gong wouldn't have qualified so quickly even with Protagonist Body.

Caitlin looked around again and said,

"Divine Beast Authority is an evolutionary version of Beast Authority. Now, I will teach you a new aura management method."

Caitlin said in a sitting posture with In-gong and extended both hands forward. This had already happened a few times, so In-gong grabbed Caitlin's hands naturally.

"I'll start."

Caitlin closed her eyes and a dark blue aura formed around her hands. The white aura produced from In-gong's body started to circulate along with Caitlin's aura.

At first, it seemed like Beast Authority.

However, In-gong could feel the difference in the depth.

Aura.

It was life force. Once it reached the ultimate state, it became the power of the soul.

In-gong had yet to reach the end of Aura. However, he roughly knew what the power of the soul was:

Conquest.

The brute power of subjugation.

It allowed him to feel a little piece of it. It was the first time In-gong felt true aura since beginning aura training.

One minute, two minutes, maybe a few hours or days - he didn't know how much time passed.

As time flew passed, In-gong awakened naturally.

He could see Caitlin sitting in the darkness with her eyes closed.

[You have learnt Divine Beast Authority Lv1.]  
[The level of Beast Authority has risen.]  
[The level of Aura has risen.]

His understanding of aura itself had risen; he had crossed a wall.

And the last one...

Crossing the wall was an achievement.

[Your level has risen.]

A white light surrounded In-gong's body.

# Chapter 38

## Entry #5

‘Level up.’

In-gong was now level 14. Now, his abilities had increased to the extent that he couldn’t be compared to Villager A anymore.

However, it was Aura that made In-gong more excited.

‘I have been wrong so far.’

He’d thought that Aura was growing with every level, but now in hindsight, he felt like a frog inside a well.

‘I am looking forward to it.’

He would need to cross a mountain then another mountain but it felt rather pleasant. He was thrilled to see what type of landscape would unfold beyond the mountain.

‘Caitlin.’

In-gong settled his excitement about Aura and looked at Caitlin sitting in front of him. He could still feel Caitlin’s aura through their entwined hands and In-gong could see something.

Caitlin also crossed a wall. Whether In-gong influenced Caitlin or she influenced him, it was clear that both of them had grown one step further.

As he watched, Caitlin sighed suddenly. She was surrounded by a blue aura as she slowly opened her eyes and smiled.

“Thank you, Shutra. It is all thanks to you.”

She was enlightened after feeling Shura’s aura. She had found a new and unfamiliar



road in Divine Beast Authority, a technique that she had been training in for many years already.

Caitlin was able to gain a deep understanding from the aura that came from In-gong. In-gong and Caitlin's auras had harmonized. They had pushed and pulled at each other like water.

It was a pleasant surprise.

In-gong and Caitlin had both felt it.

"Interesting."

In-gong and Caitlin looked around in surprise as a voice was suddenly heard. A man was sitting inside the tent where In-gong was doing his martial arts training.

"General Vandal?"

As In-gong exclaimed in a shocked voice, Vandal touched his chin and said,

"8th Princess and 9th Prince haven't slept or eaten in a few days, so many people are worried. In particular, the aide of the princess."

In-gong and Caitlin were surprised to learn that it had been a few days. It seemed like now was the time to sleep.

A new voice interrupted then.

"Right. Seira is pretty worried."

Carack was sitting next to Vandal. Carack had a hulking figure but he seemed small next to Vandal.

In-gong asked hurriedly,

"Carack, how many days have passed?"

"Uh... Now, it is dawn.. At a rough guess, I think it has been four days? That reminds me, aren't you hungry?"

Once Carack rubbed his belly while asking, In-gong also looked down at his belly. Now that it was pointed out, he was aware of an empty feeling in his stomach. Caitlin didn't say anything but her red cheeks indicated that she was also hungry.

'By the way, four days... Has it been that long?'

He hadn't been able to feel the flow of time properly until he opened his eyes. It had seemed like a moment or a few years.

'Was I in a trance?'

It was a fairly fresh feeling.

'Anyway, it has passed.'

"I am hungry. Give me something to eat. Prepare some for Noona as well."

He glanced at Caitlin and saw her smile slightly. Caitlin was definitely hungry.

It was at that moment. Vandal, who they had forgotten about due to the sudden switch in topic, spoke again.

"Let's eat together. I am also hungry."

"Then I will get some food."

As a competent subordinate, Carack read the atmosphere and rose from his seat.

Vandal spoke again,

"Both of you are strong. You have crossed one wall. Congratulations."

As a blood ogre, an ogre variant, the strong Vandal was also a master of Aura. Caitlin smiled at the heartfelt praise.

"Thank you, Vandal."

"9th Prince and 8th Princess, I will have high expectations of you in the future."

Both of them showed dazzlingly fast growth. In particular, In-gong's growth was astonishing.

It was difficult for In-gong to miss the admiration in Vandal's eyes. Once again, Vandal was Vandal.

"That reminds me, he saw the level-up effect... Does he think it is the effect of Aura?"

He didn't say anything, so it didn't seem like a big deal to him.

"Let's eat!"

At that moment, Carack rejoined them with two large food baskets. As if that wasn't enough, Seira appeared behind Carack with a basket in both hands.

Whether it was because he hadn't eaten for four days or because he was starving, he didn't stop eating once food entered his mouth. Caitlin seemed self-conscious at first, but after seeing Vandal and Carack eating quickly, she started to eat comfortably without worrying about the situation.

Everybody focused on eating for a while. An hour and a half later, the food baskets were empty and they faced each other with relaxed expressions.

"Both of you seem healthy, so I will be leaving. I'll see you later."

Vandal stood up first. Caitlin's posture became more relaxed and she said,

"Oppa will be back in a day or two. Unfortunately, I can only give you this much special training. You should review what you have learnt slowly over the rest of the year."

The fact that Caitlin was teaching In-gong Divine Beast Authority was even kept a secret from Seira. Therefore, Caitlin lowered her voice.

"I will try to find some extra time later."

Caitlin was telling him to hide Divine Beast Authority and In-gong nodded with a pleased expression.

“I understand, thank you.”

Although it was the result of a political deal with Chris, he had received so many things from Caitlin that it was difficult to be calculative, especially in regards to her hospitality.

‘I’m glad that I met Chris and Caitlin first.’

If those two people hadn’t been in Knight Saga, he might have died.

‘That reminds me.’

Something probably popped into his mind. In-gong cautiously asked Caitlin who was still looking at him warmly.

“Uh... Caitlin noona. Can I ask you something?”

“What is it?”

“Um... You don’t have to answer if it is difficult to talk about.”

“What is it? Please speak.”

There was something he had been curious about. Carack was eating fruit as dessert but he started to look at In-gong curiously.

In-gong laughed awkwardly and said,

"Why is Chris hyung at odds with Felicia noona? Did something bad happen between them? I think there has to be something. Was there an incident in the past?"

It didn’t seem like there was direct hostility between the two of them. Although Chris sounded a little sarcastic, he still called Felicia by the honorific Noonim. It might be ironic but Felicia also didn’t seem to hate Chris.

Felicia was a talented person who had to be brought into his alliance in the future. It would be difficult if she didn’t get along with Chris who was equally important.

"Uhh... I don’t think there was an incident directly related to Chris oppa and Felicia

unni.”

“Then?”

“I think it is a problem between Chris oppa and Felicia’s oppa. Unfortunately, I don’t know what happened between the two of them.”

Caitlin’s expression darkened as she thought about the problem, but then she smiled brightly.

“Still, it is a good thing. I think that I have become good friends with Felicia unni during this expedition. Unni’s relationship with Chris oppa also seems to have improved.”

In-gong had to agree. The relationship between the two of them had improved after the Red Lightning tribe was defeated.

Caitlin sighed and wriggled her fingers.

“I want to be close to my other brothers and sisters... but my mother and Chris oppa don’t like me going to the Demon King’s Palace. It has been a long time since I’ve been back.”

It made sense if it was the 4th Queen Elaine Moonlight. However, she said that Chris was also nervous about it.

‘Does Chris know? That Caitlin isn’t the child of the Demon King?’

The nature of the lycanthropes meant it was possible that Chris was already king of the lycanthropes. It was likely that Queen Elaine had told him her secret so that he could protect Caitlin.

“Then I will be leaving now. Shutra, have a good night’s sleep.”

Caitlin said while getting up. In-gong also stood up and replied,

“Yes, Noona should sleep well also. Thank you for the last few days.”

It might have been a few days but it only felt like minutes.

"Goodnight."

Carack also got up and bowed to Seira, who said goodbye back. During the last fortnight, In-gong and Caitlin had been training together, so they were forced to become friendly with each other.

Once Caitlin and Seira left the tent, In-gong lay down. Carack shook his head and while removing the food baskets, he said,

"At least lie down on the bed, the bed. And you should wash up first."

"Yes, it has been a few days. I don't know what I did."

"Well, rest well. I will check up on Prince once in awhile."

Carack smiled as he left the tent with the food baskets. In-gong closed his eyes instead of following Carack's nagging and fell into a deep sleep.

Chris returned the afternoon after In-gong finished his special training with Caitlin. His face was bright, so it seemed like his negotiations with the lizardmen had gone well.

Felicia returned to the base in the evening of the same day Chris returned. Unlike Chris, her face was upset but they couldn't delay any longer.

"The princes and princesses are impressive."

The next morning, Vandal said goodbye to the party that was ready to leave.

Chris faced Vandal with the dignity of a prince while Felicia arrogantly said goodbye to Vandal. Caitlin smiled honestly like always.

Vandal said goodbye to In-gong last. He stared down at In-gong and extended a finger.

"I am looking forward to seeing you again, 9th Prince."

"I am as well, Vandal."

In-gong shook Vandal's finger. It was a brief goodbye but it seemed like Vandal was

very impressed with him.

‘Someday.’

Vandal was expecting In-gong’s growth. Then what if they met again? He might be strong enough to acquire Vandal.

In-gong nodded energetically at the thought. Felicia, who was staring at them, gave a strange smile.

“What?”

"No, it is like seeing a connection between a boy and a wild animal."

After that, she summoned the phantom steeds for the party.

The return journey was fairly simple.

Felicia summoned the phantom steed to return to a transfer formation, where the transfer magicians returned them to the Demon King’s Palace.

There were transfer formations installed in various parts of the Demon World to allow for long range space leaps.

In Knight Saga, it had been written that the transfer formations were a key that allowed the Demon King to control the entire Demon World.

The closest transfer formation was far from the base, so they had to travel there using the phantom steeds. It was a short flight, so they hadn’t considered staying at a hostel. They had to set up camp at night but it felt like a camping trip without any discomfort.

'It is good if everyone uses this time to get to know each other better.'

The relationship between Chris and Felicia was still ambiguous, but there was fairly big progress between Felicia and Caitlin.

And on the third day, the party arrived at the tower where the transfer formation was installed.

The tower was small and the number of people staying there was smaller.

As four children of the Demon King appeared at once, the tower's manager became frantic but Chris handled him. Felicia stepped forward and directly manipulated the transfer formation.

'Aren't both of them strangely excited?'

Chris was slightly more subtle but Felicia's emotion was obvious. As first she didn't want to go back, but now she wanted to return as soon as possible.

Thanks to Chris and Felicia, In-gong's party only stayed at the tower for 20 minutes. He prepared his mind for moving through the transfer formation.

In-gong closed his eyes reflexively when moving through the transfer formation. Unlike the dwarf portal, he felt the movements clearly. It was like experiencing a rollercoaster ride.

It was big. The tower that they moved to was much bigger and filled with gorgeous decorations.

The biggest difference was the number of people gathered in front of the binary formation.

"Felicia unni!"

"Noonim, I have been waiting for you."

"You're still beautiful, Felicia."

Boys and girl in the mid-teens and mid-20s flocked to Felicia like the fan club of an idol.

"Hung, you came here again."

Felicia scoffed but her ears and cheeks were red.

'Are they her subordinates?'



It seemed like three or four of them were children of the concubines while the rest were subordinates.

“Your Highness, Prince Chris.”

“Caitlin, it has been a long time.”

There were fewer people compared to Felicia, but some still came to Caitlin and Chris.

‘Is there no one?’

In-gong didn’t have anyone come to greet him at the transfer formation. Most of them weren’t looking at In-gong, but a few people smiled at him.

‘It is easy to understand.’

He roughly knew what type of treatment Shutra received here.

‘Okay, things will change from now on.’

In-gong took a deep breath and straightened his posture.

This was a house, a battlefield and a place of conflict.

He had arrived at the Demon King’s Palace.

Author's Note:

Just to recap...

1. The reaction/effect with the people who saw In-gong level up.

1) Caitlin-> Claimed to be a gandharva blessing.

2) Carack-> It is just magic.

3) Felicia-> Whether she saw it or not is uncertain. Since Felicia never mentioned anything, In-gong guessed that she didn’t see it.

4) Vandal-> No other reaction.

2. There are rules about what In-gong can put into the inventory. This will be revealed through future developments.

# Chapter 39

## Encounter

He would obviously be alone after traveling through the transfer formation.

'Ah, a correction. I still have Carack.'

Felicia had vanished somewhere with her followers. There were many people lingering in the area, so it could feel overwhelming.

Chris and Caitlin had less people but unlike the excitement and passion of Felicia's followers, they seemed calm and serious. Chris lowered his voice as he moved and Caitlin followed Chris silently, sending a glance to In-gong before she left.

It might be considered as neglecting In-gong but he wasn't confused at all. It was because he had already foreseen this situation. Felicia, Chris and Caitlin had warned him in advance that they would have to leave him alone.

The official event schedule, including the first court gathering, would start from tomorrow. If this had been an ordinary palace, there would be a tight schedule for the princes and princesses. However, the Demon King's Palace was different.

Freedom - if he thought about it another way, it was neglect.

Chris and Caitlin were busy because they had a lot of people to meet. Meanwhile, In-gong had no one.

'It was decided that I will meet Chris and Caitlin again in the evening.'

Thus, it was okay. Now, it was time to enjoy the freely given time.

'It is good that it is quiet.'

All the people that had gathered at the transfer formation site for various reasons, including Felicia's and Chris' followers, were gone.

Carack, who was watching the view, moved his head from side to side.

"Prince, you are a prince, right? Did I miss something?"

"I am a prince."

There was no one here but he was clearly a prince.

"Follow me. Let's unload all the gear first."

"Understood."

Carack replied while lifting the large bag on his back.

"Your Highness, the 9th Prince."

A beautiful woman appeared at the entrance. She was a dark elf dressed in the blue uniform of a lower official of the Demon King's Palace.

'Oh, that's right.'

No matter what the situation was, it didn't make sense that there would be no one present for Shutra.

"Prince's subordinate? Then you are my co-worker."

Carack smiled as he asked. The dark elf female remained silent as she ignored Carack and approached In-gong.

'Pretty.'

She was a beauty with the slim body of an elf and purple hair. The short, neatly cropped hair gave her the atmosphere of a cool urban woman.

'It is a bit surprising that it is a dark elf instead of a gandharva.'

However, that had no meaning. The fact that he had a subordinate was more important. It was also good that she was a pretty female.

In-gong pushed down his excitement and remained composed as he waited for the woman. The woman looked over In-gong and said words he hadn't expected.

"Are you really the 9th Prince Shutra?"

"Huh? Uh, why?"

Wasn't he Shutra? Was she truly his subordinate?

"My name is Flora Sevensword. I belong to the Demon King's Palace's real estate administration. It is an honour."

Flora followed up with more words.

"I heard the news. You can now choose a new home according to 9th Prince's achievements."

"Huh?"

New home?

The reason for In-gong's confusion was simple. In Knight Saga, it was common for treatment to improve if there were more achievements. However, there had never been a case of a new home being assigned.

'Ah, that is because I was Zephyr.'

Zephyr stayed in a mansion that was supplied by his mother's family. Therefore, it wasn't necessary to receive a new place of residence. In the first place, it was doubtful if there was any place in the city that was better to live than Zephyr's mansion.

However, Shutra was different. There were many mansions in the Demon King's Palace that were much better than Shutra's old home.

'There is no reason not to give it to me.'

In-gong was convinced and nodded with delight.

"I understand. Then should I go the Merits Department to choose?"

"That's correct. Should I guide you to the Merits Department?"

"Please."

He already knew the location of the Merits Department. However, In-gong accepted Flora's offer just in case the layout was different from Knight Saga.

"I understand. I'll take the lead."

Flora said respectfully before turning around and taking the lead.

Carack gazed at her rear view and laughed.

"Oh, you really are the 9th Prince."

"I am a prince."

In-gong shrugged and started moving.

The Demon King's Palace wasn't just one big and terrifying castle like those commonly found in RPGs.

There were several small castles and palaces surrounded by walls, as well as comfortable living spaces arranged among well-kept roads that were like towns and cities.

The Merits Department was located at the North Building after passing through a deep path in the forest. The transfer formation was located in the same building, so In-gong's party could arrive there quickly.

'The transfer formation is on the 1st floor of the building while the Merits Department is on the 2nd floor. It is the same as Knight Saga.'

However, it was different seeing it in reality compared to in the game.

Flora guided In-gong to the Merits Department before retreating. He felt regret sending her away like this but it wasn't her position.

After Flora left, In-gong looked at the nameplate that stated 'Merits Department' on the intimidating door. His heart unknowingly became warmer.

'It is great to see it.'

The Merits Department was the place that In-gong knew the best while playing Knight Saga. He also missed the NPC Isabella who was in charge of the Merits Department.

In-gong felt the same sense of subtle appreciation like he did when gazing at Vandal but he couldn't delay due to Carack. In-gong opened the door to the Merits Department.

The Merits Department wasn't that great. It was like the VIP room of a bank with a fine desk and one staff member.

There was an intelligent looking lamia with red hair at the desk.

(a species with the upper half of a beautiful woman and the lower half of a snake)

It was Isabella who In-gong had missed.

Isabella was dressed in a neat uniform suited for a lamia and turned around to gaze at Shutra.

In-gong walked in front of Isabella.

"9th Prince Shutra Agnus."

Isabella was surprised for a moment but she quickly restored her professional expression. She gave a faint smile towards In-gong.

"Isabella from the Merits Department greets 9th Prince."

She bowed elegantly and continued speaking,

"Thank you for visiting the Merits Department. I welcome 9th Prince for your first visit."

‘She doesn’t know about me.’

She said that this was his first visit, implying that he hadn’t made any achievements so far.

It was so sad that In-gong wanted to sigh, however, he couldn’t waste time. He sat down at the chair placed in front of the desk for visitors.

“I’ve come to check my achievements. It is said that my merits level has increased, so I can get a new place to live.”

“Please wait a moment.”

The somewhat excited Isabella moved her fingers in the air and something similar to In-gong’s status window floated there.

[9th Prince Shutra Agnus]

[Merits Level 0-> 5]

[Cumulative Merits: 0-> 15,000]

[Currently Available Merits: 15,000]

[Merits related to participating in the Red Lightning expedition]

-Dwarf cave/portal discovery.

-Defeating the Red Lightning chief Kaichin’s army.

-Killing Kaichin/ Kaidum.

-Rescuing 7th Princess Felicia.

-Causing a food shortage at the base of the Red Lightning tribe.

-Found/secured the Thunder Light Anvil.

-Red Lightning expedition’s first class merit award.

[The 9th Prince’s merits level will increase to 5.]

[The facilities available to use inside the Demon King’ Palace has increased.]

[The monthly allowance has increased from 5 gold to 500 gold.]

‘Only five gold?’

This explained the decorations inside his tent. Five gold a month - even Carack received more than that.

Now, it was increased to 500 gold. His merits level was also five.

That wasn't the only thing that had risen.

"Really wonderful!"

Isabella exclaimed with a wide smile. Her cheeks turned red as she expressed her sincere admiration.

"9th Prince has raised so many merits on your first assignment. It is shameful but I thought there might have been an error when I first received news of Prince's merits. This is really great."

It was just as good as listening to Caitlin's praise. In-gong smiled and said in a relaxed voice,

"Thank you, Isabella. Then can you tell me what new homes are available?"

"I understand. Please wait a moment."

Isabella answered again as her fingers moved. This time, light gushed up from the floor to form a large map. It was so precise that it seemed like a 3D image.

"It is possible to select one of three available mansions. There is no difference in the performance because all three are grade 2 mansions."

As Isabella came out from the desk and stood in front of the map, a blue light flowed in three parts of the map.

Within the Demon King's Palace, the building rating didn't simply mean the building and the surrounding area. It included how much magic power could be supplied, additional facilities that could be installed and so on.

In-gong thought hard as he stared at the map. It was interesting that the location of the three mansions were extremely different. They were located at the east, west and



south directions respectively.

'I would prefer to be near Chris, Caitlin or Felicia.'

Caitlin's home was in the east of the Demon King's Palace while Felicia lived in the west. Due to this, In-gong automatically eliminated the home in the south and examined the different conditions.

'I want to stay as far away from Zephyr and Anastasia as possible...'

In the end, the only one left was the mansion in the east. In-gong raised his head and gazed at Isabella.

"Over there."

"I understand. I will contact the Real Estate Department to register this place as the home of 9th Prince."

Isabella then asked an additional question.

"How would you like the compensation for your achievements? Do you want to receive it here?"

The reason for this question was because In-gong went from level zero to level five instantly. Even if he only took one per level, the amount would be huge.

'The compensation isn't necessarily items or money.'

When he had played Zephyr, he received rides such as a griffon or hippogriff as compensation.

"Please deliver it to the new address. Is that possible?"

"Of course. I will handle it in the manner that you indicated."

Isabella was just as blunt in reality as she had been in Knight Saga.

"Then 9th Prince, I will ask one last thing. Do you intend to use your merit values?"

Carack was confused by the mention of 'merit values' but In-gong understood immediately.

The role of the Merits Department wasn't merely to appreciate the achievements.

As the merit level rose, treatment would improve. However, this wasn't the end.

The princes and princess could use the merit value to buy necessary things at the stores. Even if the merit values were consumed, their merit level wouldn't be decreased. Therefore, they could use merit values to purchase things when necessary.

In-gong thought about it for a moment before making a decision.

"I'll hire additional employees. Can you show me the list?"

"I understand. Please wait a moment."

Isabella returned to her desk and her fingers moved quickly. Carack approached In-gong and asked in a small voice,

"Employees? Are you talking about someone like a gardener?"

"Yes, that is one example of an employee."

If they were simply gardeners or servants, he wouldn't have to waste the merit value. In-gong wanted someone to manage the mansion when he wasn't there.

"This is the list of employees who can move to 9th Prince's mansion."

As Isabella's fingers moved, a field of light filled with people's names appeared. Once In-gong placed his finger on a name, the face and a simple profile were displayed separately.

'Uhh, I want someone to manage the mansion, so should I hire a professional butler?'

While playing Zephyr, there was a butler attached to the mansion so he didn't need to hire one. Therefore, it was In-gong's first time picking a butler.

'Their abilities are similar. Should I do separate interviews?'

In-gong contemplated the list one by one.

“Oh, Prince. This person. Isn’t it the one from earlier?”

Carack’s thick finger was pointing to the bottom of the list. In-gong reflexively looked down to see a familiar name.

[Flora Sevensword]

[Butler/ Maid function available]

[Uniqueness: A follower of the goddess of dreams and shadows, Kayla]

‘This is it.’

In-gong looked at Carack. Carack read his master’s mind and nodded quietly.

"It is great to see you again."

Approximately 15 minutes later.

Flora greeted them outside the Merits Department but there was a little bit of confusion on her face.

In-gong smiled brightly and asked her to guide them to the mansion.

“I understand. I’ll take the lead.”

She coolly took the lead just like before. In-gong said goodbye to Isabella and left the Merits Department.

Carack came out along with In-gong and chuckled at In-gong.

“What?”

"Prince, you really are a prince."

"Yes, so serve me well."

In-gong and Carack followed Flora down the corridor with pleased expressions. The distance to the new residence was far, so it was tiring to walk.

‘I’m not done with the schedule for today.’

He still had to meet Caitlin in the evening.

In-gong didn’t intend to be locked inside his house.

This was the Demon King’ Palace. It was a place of opportunity where all the children of the Demon King were gathered.

‘Should I make them look at me?’

There was a sly smile on In-gong’s face.

# Chapter 40

## Encounter #2

The dryad druid, Daphne.

She had been 17 in the Year 513. Therefore, in Year 512, she was 16.

She often frequented the Great Garden and Botanical Garden in the Demon King's Palace.

Her hobby including sunbathing and all boys, girls, women and men considered her a beauty.

The blood vampire knight, Silas.

He was 17 years old. The areas he frequented were the training ground and art museums.

His hobbies were cleaning equipment and painting.

The high elf archer, Selene.

She was 14 years old. The areas she frequented were the stables, training centers and libraries.

Her hobbies included reading romance novels and taking care of horses.

When he thought of the names, he was reminded of their age, areas they liked to frequent and hobbies.

'I must secure one of these three children of the concubines.'

When Knight Saga had first begun in Year 513, those three were definitely in the faction of a prince or princess. All three of them weren't adults yet and they liked to go around alone.

'I met Nayatra for the first time outside the Demon King's Palace, I can get Vandal if I am stronger than him and Sektum is wandering around the wilderness right now.'

Nayatra, the succubus, was one of Zephyr's escort knights.

Vandal, the ogre, was responsible for being the vanguard of the team.

Sektum was called the worst necromancer.

In the case of Nayatra, he had met her at the underground slave market, so it was important to earn enough money before then.

'It was completely lucky that I found Sektum in a random area... I will put it off for now.'

After thinking about his favourite subordinates when playing Zephyr, he came up with another influential person.

Gallehed, Caitlin's true father and the strongest of the five captains.

'He is on the same side as Caitlin, so I might be able to get along with him.'

He couldn't think of a way to approach the other captains right now. Even when he had been playing Zephyr, he didn't know them that well until Zephyr's merit level was high enough.

'Okay, then Daphne, Silas and Selene are at the top of the list while I will ponder about the rest.'

In-gong finished thinking and nodded with a cheerful expression.

'By the way, where is this place?'

"We are here."

Just as In-gong was about to check the mini-map, Flora's voice stopped him. Carack, who was following behind her, let out a cry of admiration.

"Ohh."

A picturesque house was literally right in front of him. A stone wall surrounded the entire mansion and inside was a spacious garden with a cozy looking two-storey mansion.

The mansions located on the east side went for practicality rather than glamour. The soft ivy coloured walls and red roof gave it a calm feeling.

The mansion would be his residence in the future, so In-gong was rather excited.

Once he entered the grounds of the mansion, he saw things that had previously been blocked by the stone walls.

On one side of the garden, there were items that seemed to be sent from the Merits Department for his achievements and a group of people was standing next to it.

"9th Prince, welcome back."

Out of the group that seemed a little less than 10 people, one person stepped forward and greeted In-gong. It was a middle-aged man who gave off a somewhat relaxed impression.

"I received word that you were moving residences, so I packed up quickly."

In-gong had never seen the face before but In-gong could guess his identity.

'The people who serve Shutra.'

When he looked closely, the nine people didn't belong to the same group. Six of them originally belonged to this mansion and the rest were people who used to serve Shutra.

'Did they get the message that I was coming back?'

Come to think of it, he didn't see any direct servants greet Caitlin and Chris at the transfer formation. Most of them were the children of the concubines and their subordinates.

In-gong smiled awkwardly and looked closer at the three men, beginning with the

middle-aged man.

‘They’re not gandharva.’

Pure blood gandharva gave off a fragrant scent similar to a fruit. None of the three had a sweet scent coming from their bodies. In fact, two of the three people had blue skin, so they obviously weren’t gandharva.

In-gong felt uncomfortable about this point. No matter how much the population of the gandharva had decreased, did it make sense that there wouldn’t be a gandharva serving their prince?

It seemed like there was a matter In-gong didn’t know about. Shutra’s role in Knight Saga had been very small, so In-gong didn’t know a lot about the gandharva.

‘I’ll have to find out.’

He was currently Shutra. There was a need to learn properly.

"Welcome. Please look after me in the future."

"I understand."

In-gong introduced both Carack and Felicia. As expected, the six people standing beside Shutra’s old servants were those who belonged to the mansion.

After the introductions were over, the woman who seemed to be the oldest among the servants bowed.

"Your Highness, there are guests waiting inside."

"Guests?"

He just moved, so who would already know where to find him?

‘No, is there anyone who would even come?’

In-gong hurried forward.



In the reception room located next to the mansion's hall, there were two beauties sitting next to each other while drinking tea. In-gong knew their faces.

"Felicia noona? Caitlin noona?"

Felicia, who had disappeared with her followers, was here. Additionally, wasn't he supposed to meet with Caitlin in the evening?

"Where have you been? Did you walk here?"

As Felicia said, people usually rode something instead of walking.

In-gong sat down next to both of them and asked,

"Why are both of you here?"

He was really curious about it, but Felicia sighed like it was rather absurd.

"Shutra, tomorrow is the first court gathering. It is also an official court gathering. Are you properly prepared?"

"Prepared?"

"Surely you don't intend to go to a court gathering dressed like that?"

Felicia frowned as she looked In-gong up and down. He was still wearing the same attire worn through the Red Lightning tribe expedition and he had only taken off the cloak and leather armour.

"Uh, no?"

The clothing was a problem that In-gong hadn't even thought about. Felicia covered her face with both hands, deeply sighed and rose from her seat.

"Tomorrow is your official presentation of your merits to the court. Then your merit for saving me will be announced! That can't be!"

The 6th Princess, Felicia Doomblade.

Felicia, whose cheeks were red from shame or embarrassment, quickly waved her hands and said,

"There is no time to make new clothes, but it might be possible to fix already existing ones. It is time to get ready."

"Huh? Now?"

Wasn't he going to meet Daphne or Silas?

However, Felicia didn't allow him to argue. She grabbed In-gong's arm with a beautiful but scary smile.

"Now, let's get started."

He wondered what was going on. In-gong started sweating and looked hurriedly at Carack. However, Carack wasn't free either. Caitlin got up quickly and grabbed Carack's hand.

"Carack will get ready with me."

"Uhh? I have to prepare as well?"

Carack asked In-gong with confusion. Caitlin laughed and nodded.

"We have to bring an aide to the court gathering. Carack is Shutra's only knight. You have to dress up nicely.

"I am looking forward to it."

Seira appeared out of nowhere and placed a hand on Carack's shoulder.

There were two types of court gatherings at the Demon King's Palace.

One was the informal court gathering while the other was the formal court gathering.

In the case of the informal court gathering, only the officials were gathered. However, a formal one was different.

All the children of the Demon King presently in the palace as well as the five captains under the Demon King would be gathered in one place. Many officials and nobles who wanted to shine would gather at the Demon King's Palace to participate.

Although a formal court gathering wasn't held every time a child of the Demon King returned, this time a great military suppression was completed and four children of the Demon King were involved. Therefore, it had been decided that a formal court gathering would be held.

'The game and reality are different.'

He had participated in a few formal court gatherings while playing Knight Saga. However, this was a real situation, so one corner of his heart trembled as he stood in a waiting room.

'Demon King... the sura king, Mitra.'

A being seemingly oblivious to his children, including Zephyr, he was the strongest person in the Demon World; the ruler of the Demon World.

In-gong had to face him. Not only that, the gazes of many people would be turned toward In-gong.

"Prince, I'm nervous."

Sweat flowed down Carack as he spoke. In-gong had wondered if there would be any clothes that fit Carack, but that was just a delusion. This place was the Demon King's Palace. It was a place where all types of people gathered, so there were clothes suitable for Carack.

It was interesting to see Carack wearing a formal suit and red cloak, but In-gong couldn't laugh. He responded with a stiff expression.

"Is that so? I'm also nervous."

In-gong was wearing white clothes picked by Felicia. In-gong had silver grey hair that was close to white, so it was awkward to wear white clothes. However, he couldn't refuse Felicia's choices.

"It's okay. Both of you look terrific."

"Time, just a little bit more time..."

Caitlin and Seira were waiting with In-gong and Carack, while Felicia was accompanied by Delia. Felicia had gotten to play dress up with In-gong all day yesterday but it didn't feel like it was enough.

Caitlin and Seira were dressed in long blue clothes while Felicia and Delia weren't afraid to wear purple swimsuit like clothing that was customary for dark elves. The parts that were usually exposed were covered with a black mesh.

Felicia was highly exposed while Caitlin gave off the opposite impression. Both of them looked good.

Chris was looking at them from where he was leaning against the waiting room wall. He then approached In-gong. Chris was wearing dark blue clothes instead of his usual bandit-like clothing.

"Shutra, this is your first court gathering. And I assure you... You are today's hero."

Chris and Caitlin had achieved merits many times. Felicia also succeeded in ruins excavation several times.

However, In-gong was different.

It was the first time and he gained so many merits the first time that it would be shocking.

Other children of the Demon King would be left alone, but he was different.

Some people would think he was just lucky.

However, everyone would be paying attention to In-gong. They would think again when looking at him.

"You will be shown off to everyone in the Demon King's Palace."

Chris said, staring into In-gong's eyes. The time came and the door to the waiting room

opened.

It was the beginning of the court gathering.

# Chapter 41

## Encounter #3

The black castle, deep inside the forest to the north, was called the True Demon King's Palace. It was the place where the Demon King lived.

Located in the center of the palace was the magnificent room where the court gathering would take place. There were high ceilings reminiscent of the night sky and a space without pillars that was wide enough to accommodate hundreds of people at a time.

Among the five queens, only four were staying in their hometowns, with the exception of Shutra's mother, 5th Queen Semita Ignus, who had died early. Therefore, the only female present at the court gathering was 4th Princess Anastasia Nekrion.

Standing behind her were ten of the Demon King's concubines and their children. At first glance, they seemed to be gathered together without any distinction but there was an invisible wall between them.

Some time passed.

Finally, the door opened and the four protagonists of today's court gathering entered. Silent gazes enveloped the four people instantly.

'Their eyes are all gazing here.'

Looking at the front where faces were visible, In-gong was able to recognize most of them. It was because the main characters of Knight Saga were gathered here.

'Let's concentrate.'

He dispersed his consciousness around his surroundings. It wasn't the time to glance around now.

There were enemies and there were allies but that was a normal story in Knight Saga.

Nothing was confirmed about Shutra since he was starting from zero. The difference was that he had built an alliance with Chris and Caitlin who were considered middle ranked bosses. Additionally, if he had been Zephyr, it would have been impossible to get close to Felicia.

In-gong settled his heart and stood up straight. He took a dignified step forward under all the gazes.

Chris stopped moving in the middle of the long red path leading up to the Demon King. Caitlin, Felicia and In-gong, who had been walking next to him, stopped stopped as well, while the supporters stood in place three steps behind them.

“I greet the ruler of the Demon World.”

Chris played a leading role in the Red Lightning tribe suppression. Therefore, he represented all of them as he went down on one knee. Everybody standing beside him took the same action.

It was silent despite the fact that there were over 100 people gathered in a large room.

In-gong swallowed his saliva while bowing. He couldn't even think about Carack behind him.

The quality of the gazes changed. It felt like all the eyes had converged into one on his body.

"I will report the merits of the princes and princess."

A familiar voice broke the heavy silence. It was Isabella from the Merits Department.

“The 7th Prince, Chris Moonlight.”

Once Isabella called him, Chris alone stood up. Isabella, who stood on the lowest level of the three-tiered dais, announced Chris' merits in a cheerful voice.

The only response was silence. Some smiled at Chris' activities while others glowered.

The mood slowly changed as Caitlin and Felicia's achievements were announced successively.

Finally, it was In-gong's turn.

"The 9th Prince, Shutra Agnus."

In-gong stood up slowly and saw the Demon King in front of him. He was sitting on a huge throne at the very top level of the dias.

He was a giant but even so, it wasn't due to his body. He just gave off an enormous presence. His marble white skin was covered with long black hair. Due to his coarse face, it was hard to guess his age. Furthermore, he seemed both young and old.

In-gong couldn't look away. He hadn't even looked at the five captains that were on the level below the Demon King. The Demon King's red eyes had caught In-gong.

The distance to the Demon King was approximately 20 metres but his breath felt blocked. It felt like when he encountered the wyrm, Enkidu, in the illusion.

He was about to collapse, unable to withstand it. He was breaking in front of that gaze.

Demon King Mitra.

Zephyr's father, the father of all the Demon King's children.

In-gong had forgotten for awhile. He had forgotten that the most fearsome presence in the Demon King's Palace wasn't Zephyr.

If the Demon King decided it, then In-gong would die. If he wanted to, not only In-gong, but everyone present would turn into corpses.

However, In-gong didn't bow. Rather than succumbing to the Demon King's gaze that forced obedience, he resisted.

'Conquest.'

Those eyes attempted to overcome the situation and make him submit.

The other person was the Demon King.



This was the power of Conquest!

An invisible force crashed into the air. In-gong endured and the Demon King's eyes flashed. The Demon King wasn't the only one to be surprised.

In-gong's merit announcement was in progress. At first, there were no reactions. However, as the achievements increased, everyone's expressions changed and some of them blinked with confusion.

At the mention of Felicia's rescue, their reactions peaked.

They didn't know what was happening. Was it just a coincidence? Or a manipulation? 6th Princess Felicia's absurd mistake? Or did the 9th Prince hide his talents until now?

These silent thoughts filled the room. Once again, the silence was broken by a voice.

"Shutra."

The demon king opened his mouth. The act of him calling out In-gong's name had a bigger impact than the announcement of In-gong's merits. Even Chris, who had been enjoying seeing everyone's gazes change, made a shocked expression.

The Demon King had called out a name at the court gathering. This was the first time Chris had seen it. Even Zephyr hadn't had his name called at the court gathering.

The five captains stared at them while Isabella was so shocked she dropped the merits sheet on the ground. It was so silent that even the sound of the piece of paper falling seemed loud. However, no one turned to look at her.

The Demon King, who shocked everyone with one word, didn't respond to any of the staring eyes. He only looked down at In-gong and spoke in a cold voice.

"I look forward to your future."

Just plain words. However, he had never said them to anyone else. That was why the words had value.

Thus, In-gong's first court gathering was completed.

"Hoaaaah..."

As soon as they returned to the waiting room, someone sat on the ground and made a sound like wind was being blown. It was Carack. Particularly, Carack was so pale that his green skin looked white.

In contrast, there was someone who was really excited.

"Amazing! Amazing! Amazing! Amazing!"

Caitlin's eyes were moving faster than usual as she stared at In-gong.

Felicia scoffed and uttered an insult,

"A lowly guy like this?! No way! Did you know that this was the first time I heard Abamama speak in three and a half years?"

(TL Note: Felicia uses a term Abamama that is specifically used by a royal child towards their father. If they were referring to their mother then it would be Omamama. It is a term commonly heard in Korean historical dramas.)

Unless it was an official event like a court gathering, it was rare to see the Demon King.

"Did you call him Abamama?"

Caitlin blinked with surprise and Felicia shouted,

"That isn't the point!"

The demon king had called In-gong's name. Moreover, he had even encouraged In-gong by saying he would look forward to the future.

"What is this? Clearly, it was just a merits presentation but..."

In-gong had many merits this time. Even so, the merits weren't that huge compared to the past. The rebellion of the Red Lightning tribe couldn't be called incredible even from the viewpoint of the Demon World. It had only been an army of thousands.

2nd Prince Zephyr and 4th Princess Anastasia both had merits that were worth several times more than In-gong's.

However, the demon king had never called their names at a court gathering.

So, why would he call In-gong's name?

Was it because a child no one had expected anything from suddenly showed achievements? Or was he a child who was special to the demon king?

"Haha, hahahaha!"

Hearty laughter suddenly filled the room. Caitlin looked at the owner of the laugh with an anxious expression.

"Oppa?"

"Poor Chris, he has gone crazy. Yes, you must be crazy. I'll admit it."

Even if Felicia's relationship with Chris had improved over the last few days, she still spoke harshly about his reaction.

However, Chris wasn't crazy. He just continued laughing as he approached In-gong.

"I said it was your show... but you really showed me."

In fact, he had been hoping for something like this.

Everybody would look at In-gong. They would also realize that In-gong was on the same boat as Chris.

However, the situation was more than he had expected. That outcome couldn't be calculated.

Chris' eyes shone as he faced In-gong who was sitting in the chair. Although it couldn't be compared to Enkidu or the demon king, he could feel power coming from Chris' eyes.

"Shutra, from now on there will be people paying attention to you. There will be some

who will try to approach you and there are those you should be on guard against."

No one could read the true meaning of the demon king. There were those who considered the words of the demon king to be 'favouritism'.

'Maybe it really is favouritism.'

Chris couldn't read the mind of the demon king so that might be the case.

In-gong listened quietly to Chris' encouragement and warning.

Even without seeing Caitlin and Felicia's reaction, he could tell what a huge impact the words would have on the Demon King's Palace.

'Resistance to the gaze... No, it is because I endured that merciless gaze.'

That's why the Demon King showed some interest. Other than that, he couldn't think of a reason.

He suddenly woke up. It was like cold water had been poured on his excitement to meet the characters in Knight Saga.

Yet now wasn't the time to think about it. He had to build up his strength and reinforce his position in the Demon King's Palace.

'I didn't look at Anastasia.'

4th Princess Anastasia had clearly been at today's court gathering. The five commanders, the most powerful being below the demon king, had also been at their seats. However, In-gong hadn't seen any of them. It was because he had needed to overcome the demon king's eyes.

The demon king was such a being and Zephyr was a monster who would be able to surpass the demon king after a few years.

'Conquest.'

That word had popped into his head when he met the eyes of the demon king. It had given him the power to withstand such a merciless gaze.

It was a strange feeling. Despite the enormous presence, he was once again reminded of the threat of Zephyr. Rather than tremble in fear, he felt something deep inside his heart.

“Shutra, go back and rest for today.”

Caitlin said, touching In-gong’s shoulder. Felicia also spoke with a cheery smile.

"Yes, don't you know that Abamama had a good impression of you? Today is a good day."

The attention of the demon king... Felicia sounded a little bit envious.

“Thank you.”

Once again, both Caitlin and Felicia had good personalities. He couldn't feel even the slightest sense of dishonesty from them.

In-gong returned to his home with Carack and rested like both of them had said to do. He was physically and mentally exhausted, so he could sleep with worrying.

The next morning:

In-gong received a letter from the Merits Department.

It was about a new mission.

"This is a mission from the demon king."

# Chapter 42

## Encounter #4

“Prince, Prince! Wake up!”

Hearing Carack’s rugged voice, In-gong turned around reflexively and blocked his ears. However, it was useless. Carack’s crude hands shook In-gong’s shoulders.

He wanted to say, ‘Five more minutes...’ but woke up reluctantly from his sleep instead. Carack spoke with an apologetic voice as he looked at In-gong’s sleepy face.

"I know you are tired from yesterday, so I was going to let you sleep in. However, a letter from the Merits Department arrived."

“Merits Department?”

Although he was still sleepy, In-gong expressed his curiosity. It was very rare thing for the Merits Department to contact someone first.

"Here is some water to wash up. You should wake up first."

Carack extended a washbasin filled with cold water. After In-gong finished washing his face, he realized that Carack wasn’t the only one in the room.

"This is the letter from the Merits Department. Would you like me to open it?"

Flora, the butler he hired yesterday, was holding a tray containing a letter. In-gong nodded.

“Yes.”

In contrast to Carack’s excitement, Flora dutifully opened the envelope and politely handed the letter to In-gong.

‘It is a summons.’

The letter told him to come to the Merits Department because there was a new mission.

In-gong read everything and nodded. It was better to visit in person than to keep worrying about it.

"This is a mission from the demon king."

"Huh?"

"This is a mission from the demon king."

In-gong blinked and thought that he had heard wrongly. However, Isabella repeated the exact same words. She was speaking to In-gong but her eyes and voice also showed surprise.

In the end, Carack couldn't bear it any longer and asked,

"The demon king picked a mission to give to Prince?"

His voice was tense from the confusion. Rather than take offense at Carack's rudeness, Isabella folded her arms and said,

"I don't know the details. I was just given a command to leave this mission to 9th Prince."

Just like how it was rare for the Merits Department to contact someone first, it was also very rare for the demon king to entrust a mission to a specific prince or princess.

'No, has it ever happened before?'

As he searched through his memories, he couldn't recall a time when the demon king had given someone a mission.

First, there had been the encouragement at the court gathering. Now, there was a mission.

"A special mission?"

In-gong's voice was tense. Isabella quickly shook her head.

"No, it is a mission that was already on the list."

It was one of the missions already prepared for the children of the demon king.

Isabella was telling the truth but he felt like the reason wasn't that simple.

"I understand, I will receive the mission. Do I need to sign anything?"

"Ah, over here."

Along with the mission letter, Isabella extended a piece of paper containing the names of the demon king's children. It seemed to be a mission confirmation sheet.

After signing it, In-gong received the letter and left the Merits Department. Carack followed him swiftly and asked,

"Prince, what is the mission?"

"Let's go back first."

There were rumours about the court gathering, so he felt people gawking at him from every direction.

In-gong felt very awkward, so he didn't want to stand in the corridor talking to Carack.

"I heard that the Merits Department contacted you. Did you just come back from there?"

Chris and Caitlin were sitting side by side in the mansion's drawing room.

In-gong laughed as soon as he saw them.

"News travels fast. Do you have a source of information?"

"No way, I just asked around."



Chris laughed and In-gong nodded. It wasn't a secret, so it wasn't strange that Chris knew about it.

This time it was Caitlin who asked.

"Shutra, have you already received a new mission?"

"Yes, this is the mission."

In-gong took out the letter and showed it to Chris and Caitlin. Chris narrowed his eyes and read it out loud.

"Subjugate the group of casios... It is a subjugation mission."

"Is that at Enger Plains where the centaurs are?"

Chris nodded at In-gong's question.

"Yes, I've been there once with Caitlin. Subjugating the casios is an annual event, so it will be good."

The casios were wolf-like creatures that rushed in groups. Like Chris said, a large number of them appeared every year on the Enger Plains, so a periodic subjugation was needed.

'In other words, this is a repeat quest.'

It was a mission that In-gong had performed repeatedly in Knight Saga.

Chris looked once again at the mission letter. The demon king had handed him a simple task but it could be a bit too much for the current In-gong.

He didn't know what the demon king was thinking when he gave In-gong this mission. Was he really showing favouritism to In-gong?

"Well, it will be fine if it is Shutra. You can do it."

Rather than questioning it, Chris gave In-gong words of encouragement while Caitlin stroked his head with an expression of worry.

"Although Caitlin and I would like to go with you... We don't have an unreasonable number of appointments like Felicia noonim but we still have a schedule."

"Are you going back to the land of the lycanthropes?"

Chris nodded at In-gong's question.

"Yes. Not yet, but soon. I delayed my departure for a few days because of my promise to teach you Aura. So, you will leave first."

"Shutra is departing tomorrow. Today, I will definitely teach you."

Caitlin made fists enthusiastically. She felt a little bit bad for the delay on her promise to teach him Divine Beast Authority and Aura.

'Genuine sincerity.'

It was the type of sincerity that had made her attempt to break the cliff.

Chris laughed like he thought Caitlin was cute and said to In-gong,

"Shutra, tell Felicia noonim the news.

"Huh? Felicia noona?"

"If you just go, she will surely have a grudge. Additionally, you have something to receive from Noonim."

"Something to receive?"

"You will know soon."

In-gong wouldn't have time while being taught, so he sent Flora to Felicia's home.

"Okay, then Caitlin, let's begin. I will help you today, so expect a lot."

Chris' muscles flexed. Caitlin's face was also full of motivation.

Thanks to the ambitious lycanthrope siblings, one day passed in a flash.

Felicia appeared the next morning after the news was conveyed. It wasn't at In-gong's home, but in front of the transfer formation.

"I'm not late."

"Not late? I have been waiting."

Felicia glared at Chris after his mocking words. This was really friendly in comparison to when they had first met at the Red Lightning tribe.

Five people were standing in front of the transfer formation. They were Chris, Caitlin, Seira, In-gong and Carack.

Felicia approached In-gong.

"Shutra, the dark elves are an honourable species. A favour or grudge is never easily forgotten."

Felicia was late for a reason. She had things to prepare.

"I heard that you are going to Enger Plains. You'll need quick feet to go with the centaurs. Ride these special guys."

Felicia gestured to the two big dracos in front of her. They were very well reigned and behaved in front of In-gong and Carack.

"And this."

Felicia pulled out a necklace and handed it to In-gong. The necklace was the real reason why Felicia was late.

It was a crescent-shaped, silver ornament with a purple gem.

In-gong knew what this necklace was. So, he couldn't hide his embarrassment.

"Felicia noona?"

The tears of a dark elf from 6th Princess Felicia Doomblade, daughter of 3rd Queen Sylvia Doomblade and princess of the dark elves.

"You said that you won't easily forget?"

Felicia winked playfully and embraced In-gong lightly.

"Take care of your body."

Felicia patted his back a few times before stepping back. Her ears and cheeks were red like she was shy about her actions.

Caitlin also hugged In-gong lightly.

"Be careful."

As always, it was a bright smile. In-gong nodded then Chris said from the rear.

"Well, shall I just let you go?"

"Hyung should hold out your hand."

In response to In-gong' reply, Chris laughed and stroked his head.

"Come back safely."

"Yes, Chris hyung should also be healthy."

In-gong said goodbye to everyone. Carack also said goodbye to Seira and entered with In-gong.

In-gong looked at Caitlin one more time before entering the transfer formation.

The Assenba Continent, which was connected continuously from the north to the south, was divided into two parts.

They were travelling from the north to the south.

The boundary across the continent was unclear and ambiguous. There were places

where the Demon World and Human World were directly connected like the Jishuka Mountains. There were also places with a zone in the middle.

There was a huge lake on the continent called Caldea,

A desert that led to the deaths of everything alive that entered it,

A deep wall of unfathomable depths,

And one more.

It was something that hadn't stopped once since the world opened.

It was a being who refused to lie down and take a break. Red and yellow lava spewed out and covered his body but he wasn't in any pain. Rather, he felt comfortable in the burning lava.

He had been born in lava. No flame in this world could hurt him.

The great Enkidu.

One of the six elder dragons that was said to have the power of a god.

He had received a shock as a guest had come to visit him for the first time in hundreds of years.

He was small.

Compared to Enkidu who was the size of a mountain, he was a mere speck.

However, Enkidu showed interest instead of ignoring him. He looked down at the body wrapped in black and red armour.

Conquest, war, famine and death.

The four prophesied knights of the Apocalypse.

Enkidu knew who was in front of him. Not long ago, he had felt the distinct aura of conquest coming from the Jishuka Mountains.

It was a flame;

A flame that constantly swallowed up everything.

Enkidu called his name,

"Start, War Knight."

It was a person who lived in eternal struggle.

The War Knight opened his mouth.

# Chapter 43

## Advent

The transfer formations, spread out in various areas of the Demon World like a spider web, varied in size and shape.

In-gong closed his eyes against against the blue light, that appeared when the transfer formation was activated, and slowly opened them after feeling a new sensation.

There were continuous streams of grey light over the blue which hadn't yet scattered completely.

Under the command of the Demon King, the managers of the transfer formations were required to secure a space of a certain size in case the transfer failed.

It was the same for this stone tower as he arrived at the other end of the transfer formation.

"We have arrived?"

"Yes."

In-gong responded appropriately to Carack while looking at the entrance for the person who was supposed to meet them. Indeed, a female soldier appeared not long after In-gong had arrived.

"I greet 9th Prince. I am Karma, a ranger who will be your assistant."

The woman said while placing her right fist on her left chest, a special pose used by soldiers.

"Uh, yes. It is great to see you. I am Shutra."

In-gong wasn't surprised by the salute. Instead, he was surprised by the appearance of the woman called Karma.

She had tanned skin, black hair and a pretty face. She was approximately 20 years old and her body was wrapped in armour, but that was common. No, her body was quite pretty but things were different from the waist down. Her legs looked like horse legs and she had horseshoes instead of ordinary feet. Looking closer, she also had the hindquarters of a horse.

‘Uh, let’s see. Isn’t this similar to a satyr?’

Satyr were short people with the upper body of a person and the lower body of an animal, normally one with two legs.

Satyrs often had the legs of deer or goats, so it wasn’t too common for one to have the legs of a horse. However, he had rarely seen them in Knight Saga.

In-gong searched through his memories before focusing on the present situation. The only thing that mattered was the woman, Karma, in front of him, not the rarity of her species. There was no reason to be surprised at a fantasy species when there was an orc, Carack, right behind him with green skin.

"I will take care of you in the future."

Karma said to In-gong with a smile. Looking at the bright smile, he felt quite good.

"Thank you."

Karma returned to her normal posture and stood, waiting for him. Carack asked impatiently,

"What is it?"

"Um... Don’t you have any more soldiers?"

Karma thought it was strange as she looked behind In-gong and Carack. It was out of the ordinary for the prince assigned to the mission to have only one orc as an attendant.

However, this was the reality. In-gong replied with a bitter laugh.



"This is all I have."

In fact, In-gong had thought about bringing a troop of soldiers. His merit level was reasonable enough and there had been compensation received from the Merits Department. The reason why In-gong sought out the children of the concubines was to make them join his troops.

However, In-gong lacked the time needed. The mission arrived so suddenly that he couldn't afford to buy some soldiers.

"I understand, then we will start straight away."

Karma was baffled for a moment that it was just the two of them, but she soon smiled and led In-gong and Carack away.

As they descended the transfer formation tower, a few managers came out to greet In-gong. In-gong responded appropriately, distributed the necessary supplies and left the stone tower.

The gift of the dracos Felicia had given them was really good. As soon as he got on a draco, he learnt Draco Unyielding Spirit Lv1. However, even if he hadn't learnt it, In-gong wouldn't have had any troubles moving on the dracos.

"Whoa, isn't this better than what I thought?"

Carack admired from the top of a draco. The two metre tall Carack was already over 100 kilograms and he was carrying a big bag on his back. Nevertheless, the draco's face didn't show any signs of difficulties.

Karma also smiled with admiration.

"I've heard about the dark elves' dracos but this is my first time seeing them. They seem tougher than rumoured."

"It is the first time I've tried riding one. However, are you going to walk?"

Carack asked, looking at Karma. Karma replied with a smile.

"I have these two legs. You don't have to worry."

Her legs were shaped like horse legs.

Underneath the hill the stone tower was located on was an endless open meadow that spread out in every direction. Karma ran lightly and led the party while In-gong and Carack followed on the dracos.

The wind in the meadow was cool and dry. While riding, In-gong touched the necklace around his neck.

The tears of a dark elf.

It was a powerful magic that guarded the mind of the wearer. There was no other additional ability, but it was a favourite item in Knight Saga due to its excellent defense against magic spells.

‘However, the method to obtain it is completely different.’

The tears of the dark elves had been products obtained after Felicia died on the Day of Massacre. However, at present, he had received the tears of a dark elf as a gift from Felicia herself.

‘Take care of your body.’

Felicia’s words once again popped up in his head. It was a voice as warm as her body temperature when she embraced him.

It wasn’t just Chris and Caitlin who she had a changed relationship with. Felicia was now a powerful ally rather than an enemy.

‘The Day of Massacre.’

It was no longer just In-gong’s life at risk. Chris, Caitlin and Felicia’s lives were also hanging on it; the three people he wanted to protect.

‘Well, it is still just the beginning.’

Setting Caitlin and Felicia aside, his laughter emerged unconsciously at the thought of protecting Chris. While Caitlin and Felicia appeared slender, Chris was full of

incredible muscles. It seemed more like In-gong would use him as a shield, rather than protect him.

After finishing those thoughts, In-gong opened his inventory and looked at the items he had stored recently. They were the rewards he received from the Merits Department for his merit level.

‘It is surprisingly reasonable.’

It was obvious, but the Merits Department used a system where those with a higher merit level would receive better rewards. However, low level rewards weren’t necessarily bad.

As long as the items weren’t expensive, they were given things necessary for the mission:

A health potion; mana potion; tent with protective spells on it, for sleeping; and a sleeping bag with a spell to preserve body temperature.

In-gong currently had a merit level of five, so he would get equipment such as swords and armour after completing this mission.

‘When I finish this mission, my merit level will be around seven?’

The casios subjugation quest was a repeat quest from the Merits Department. It could only be performed once a year, so the recurrence frequency was low among the recurring quests. However, the merit points gained from it were quite high.

‘Speaking of weapon problems.’

The casios were four legged creatures reminiscent of giant wolves. If he fought in front, he would be able to use Earth Quaker and Beast Authority when he was close to it. However, this mission wasn’t based on a one-on-one confrontation.

It was fighting a crowd.

Moreover, the herd of centaurs was the perfect cavalry. He had speed to match with the cavalry, so he needed a suitable weapon.

‘A sword might be conventional, but don’t riders normally use a spear or something similar?’

Due to the weapons taken from the dungeon, he had a variety of weapons, such as axes and crossbows as well as swords and spears.

Thanks to the power of Conquest and Protagonist Body, after starting the learning process for a sword, it would take a few days to raise it to a sufficient level.

‘I have to discuss it with Carack, so let’s not decide too quickly.’

In-gong deactivated the inventory and looked straight ahead. He didn’t know what would soon unfold in front of him.

The Enger Plains were so wide that it would take two days to reach a centaur settlement. As a result, the party started to prepare a camp in the early evening instead of overworking themselves.

As a guide, Karma knew a few good places to camp. There were hills to stop the wind and a few camping trails had remained.

In-gong got down from the draco, activated the inventory window and put his hand into Carack’s bag. He was used to the lie and now found it natural to pull things out of a bag.

Karma looked on with admiration as the tent and camping supplies set received from the Merits Department were taken out. At first, she was surprised that the prince was bringing things out personally but that soon changed. It was because so many items were pouring out that she doubted the capacity of the bag.

"Wah, that is real strength."

Carack was carrying around a bag containing so many things.

Carack shrugged at Karma’s pure admiration and said,

"Heh, I have a little bit of strength."

He would keep In-gong’s inventory a secret until a knife came to his throat. Carack

tried to wink at In-gong, but it was useless.

“No, that... It is the draco.”

It was the draco that carried Carack and the bag.

Carack laughed awkwardly at Karma’s words and turned to In-gong.

The atmosphere was pretty good as they set up the tent and prepared a fire for their meal. The ingredients stored in his inventory were preserved, so Carack prepared a quite luxurious dish of chicken stew.

“Now, eat.”

The tough but kind Carack handed In-gong a bowl. It was steaming hot and looked tasty.

“I will eat it well.”

That was when In-gong heard it.

He felt the earth start shaking. At first, it seemed to be coming from a distance but it became stronger instantly. The draco also noticed the abnormality and gave a low cry.

In-gong swallowed quickly and put his bowl down as Carack picked up an axe instead of a ladle. Karma, who had climbed up the hill, shouted towards them,

“Casios!”

He guessed it was due to Protagonist Correction.

In-gong equipped Earth Quaker on his right arm.

# Chapter 44

## Advent #2

"How many are there?"

Carack held his axe as he asked Karma who was lying flat on the hill. Karma gazed at the front with wide eyes before shouting in an urgent voice.

"Seven? Ten? There are also centaurs!"

In-gong climbed directly to the top of the hill because the report didn't make sense. As soon as he saw the crowd from a distance, he opened the mini-map.

"There are centaurs with the casios. Are the centaurs captured?"

They were far away, so he couldn't be sure, but there were five armoured centaurs and dozens of casios.

The casios looked like a wolf with horns on their heads, but their size was much bigger than the wolf, especially the males.

Carack didn't have a mini-map, so he turned towards In-gong with a frown.

"They are a scouting group. They probably came out to meet Prince. Two of them are already gone."

Centaurs usually scouted in groups of seven. However, there were only five visible centaurs, so two had already lost their lives.

At this moment, both the centaurs and casios were approaching In-gong's party. Carack asked In-gong,

"What do you want to do?"

Should they fight with the centaurs or escape?

If the dracos moved in the opposite direction, they were likely to escape, but In-gong shook his head. If he abandoned the centaurs and ran away, this mission would be ruined from the beginning.

"Let's do something crazy."

Fight. However, it wasn't just fighting.

In-gong made the decision hurriedly and declared to Carack and Karma.

"They are running straight this way!"

It was less than 10 seconds but many things could happen in that time. Karma formed tight fists at the top of the hill. A desperate look formed in her eyes as the centaurs approached.

Aboard the dracos, In-gong and Carack were waiting at the bottom of the hill. Carack asked one last time,

"Are we really doing this?"

"It is real."

"It was a short meeting but I really enjoyed it."

"I will continue seeing you for a long time."

However, it wasn't the time to laugh and make jokes. Karma's shout was like a thunderbolt,

"Now!"

"Don't die!"

Carack's unique battle cry swallowed up Karma's cry. At the same time, the draco In-gong was riding sprang up from the ground.

The greatest feature of the dracos, that the dark elves used instead of horses, was their

explosive instantaneous speed. It was only a few seconds, but the dracos could run several times faster than horses.

In-gong used the draco's explosive speed from the beginning and the draco leapt from the hill at a fearsome pace.

Now, In-gong could see the centaurs and the casios. After hearing Carack's battle cry, they saw In-gong on the draco and instinctively slowed down. However, the draco didn't stop moving.

"Penetrate through!"

The draco Felicia gave him was quite intelligent. It understood In-gong's command and used the correct speed to draw in the enemy accurately.

The draco carrying In-gong moved in between the centaurs and the casios and they all flinched at the sudden intrusion. In-gong directed the draco towards the casios he had been aiming at since he confirmed it on the mini-map.

'This is the boss!'

There was also a leader in a group of casios; he was in charge of directing the people in the hunting group.

'How do I determine the boss? Of course, he is the biggest one!'

The boss casios was bigger than a horse, so he could distinguish it from the others at a glance. Moreover, its big size made it easier to cling to.

In-gong jumped and clung to the neck of the boss casios as the draco continued moving through a crowd of casios.

It only took a few seconds. However, In-gong didn't stop. The casios was confused and couldn't make a proper decision in the short amount of time. In-gong had to take advantage of this.

"Kuaang!"

The casios leader raised his head and called out an alarm. In-gong clung to the casios



leader with his left arm and both his legs as he formed a fist with his right hand.

‘I will bet it all on this one strike!’

He was handling the casios leader with one blow.

He was by himself. This was In-gong who had already killed orcs from the Red Lightning tribe. The biggest difficulty of this mission was to hang on, not smash the casios leader’s head.

In-gong gathered aura around his right fist and used the explosive power of Divine Beast Authority. It was a technique that hit the enemy’s body with Aura, causing it to freeze. The amount of aura consumed was intense, but it was the most powerful attack that In-gong could unleash.

He focused his aura for precision!

His body remembered the technique since he had practiced it more than a dozen times. The moment that In-gong punched, there was a flash of white aura.

It was good thus far as it was the same as practice. However, something unexpected happened the moment the technique was completed.

Earth Quaker.

It was enchanted by the power of the dragon, Enkidu.

His aura felt violent. The destructive power of the technique had doubled!

Kwaang!

With a huge roar, the casios leader’s head exploded. The crushed skull splattered blood and flesh. It was like his head had been erased from the world.

The sight of the casios leader’s head disappearing in an instant caused the casios to be stunned. Some of them even ran away.

In-gong was also surprised. He knew he had become stronger after the battle with the Red Lightning tribe, however, it was his first time using Earth Quaker since

discovering it. So, he hadn't imagined it would make his aura so violent.

'Isn't this almost like Caitlin?'

Recalling how Caitlin had caused an orc to explode while they were rescuing Felicia, In-gong swallowed his saliva. He looked at the Earth Quaker on his right.

'I can do it.'

He could do it! That wasn't the only reason for the strong explosion. Beast Authority and Aura were level 5 and 6 respectively. He couldn't be compared to the first time he fought the Red Lightning tribe.

In-gong frowned. Circulating the pure white aura boosted his physical abilities and made him several times stronger than Villager A.

'Go.'

In-gong kicked his feet. It had only been a few seconds since the head of the casios leader exploded, so there were a few shocked casios that had been unable to escape.

If there was a word symbolizing Beast Authority, it was explosive power. While the draco rampaged, In-gong narrowed the distance to another casios. His aura exploded again and a casios collapsed.

In-gong didn't spare his aura. The casios leader was dead, so this battle was as good as over.

"Kuraha!"

Carack let out a battle cry as he moved through the crowd of casios. He couldn't smash a casios in one move like In-gong, but the huge battle axe was an overwhelming threat by itself.

When the weak centaurs grabbed weapons to try and counterattack as well, the casios lost their will to fight. They used the momentum to start fleeing.

"Kara!"

Carack roared after the fleeing casios. Instead of talking to him, In-gong turned and stared at the centaurs.

The expressions of the centaurs, who were wearing light leather armour as scouts, were really complicated. They were excited from the battle, pleased about being rescued and anxious since they didn't know who the people before them were.

In-gong recognized that the green centaur was the leader. There was a blue armband around his right arm.

"I am 9th Prince Shutra."

The centaurs roared simultaneously.

"Really wonderful! Amazing!"

Karma shouted with excitement. Her wide and bright eyes reminded him of Caitlin.

'Isn't it natural?'

It hadn't even been a day since they were separated, so her face and voice were clear. In-gong was reminded of Caitlin but he quickly realized reality again.

"Prince, wipe your face."

Carack handed over a dry washcloth to In-gong. He was known as In-gong's aide, so the centaurs would listen to his simple instructions.

Two centaurs dismantled the corpses of the casios while the other three took down the tent and packed the luggage. It was in preparation to move.

As they prepared to leave for a new camp, In-gong mounted the draco and replied to Karma absent-mindedly.

"Well, well. Yes, yes. Good. Make sure they eat when we arrive at the new camp."

The draco seemed to only eat live food like snakes but they were actually omnivores. The casios meat from today would be enough to last a few weeks.

“Prince, we are ready to leave.”

Carack said while covering a small cauldron with a lid. It felt like he was going to start preparing a meal while moving.

"The nearest campground is only 20 minutes from here."

Karma's eyes were still shining like lanterns. In-gong directed the draco toward the centaur scout leader.

"Did you say you were Quick Wind?"

“Yes, Your Highness.”

The centaur with the armband, named Quick Wind, responded to In-gong's question. His eyes weren't as bright as Karma's, but there were clearly emotions in them.

‘Ah, Prince remembered my name!’

In-gong guessed that might be the emotion, then asked a question,

"Can you give me the details of the situation?"

Immediately after the battle was over, he hadn't been able to hear anything except for their names and that they were a scouting group. Quick Wind spoke in a fast manner like his name,

"We were expecting 9th Prince tomorrow. In order to check the safety of the surrounding areas, we were sent to scout and encountered the casios."

Quick Wind's face darkened dramatically. Like he had thought, they had been scouting.

In-gong sighed and asked again,

"The casios have already come this far down?"

The casios subjugation quest required him to defeat the casios in the north after joining the centaurs. In other words, the casios should have been in the north at this point.

However, the casios had shown up here. It was a little farther south than the settlements of the centaurs.

Quick Wind answered with an uneasy expression,

"It doesn't seem like the whole group has come down. It's just... the casios seem to be moving faster than usual."

It was different from the previous times. In-gong sensed something ominous as he listened.

"I can't believe this. The demon king's mission really isn't ordinary."

Carack said from beside In-gong.

'I had been hoping this wouldn't happen.'

Of course, it wasn't like the demon king had been expecting this exact situation. However, he would have felt something was wrong if the demon king's task was ordinary.

In-gong nodded while gazing at Karma ahead of him.

"Once we get there, let's have a meal."

"Don't worry. I won't eat everything."

Carack laughed and tapped on the pot that he was holding like a treasure.

The next afternoon, In-gong arrived at the settlement of the centaurs.

# Chapter 45

## Advent #3

The centaurs, who had the upper body of a person and the lower body of a horse, were often likened to perfect cavalry.

Their maneuverability and crushing power...

Their intelligence allowed them to follow commands and their two arms could use weapons.

Their superiority as cavalry was high.

An ordinary cavalry member was a combination of two different creatures, man and horse, so it was impossible to perfectly combine their strengths.

However, a centaur was literally that existence. They were able to use long weapons effectively and there was also a synergy effect.

Knight Saga's centaurs were also similar. However, they were somewhat different from what he had imagined.

Their size was smaller than he had expected.

They had an upper body that was almost the same size as a person, but the lower half was different. It was small compared to the upper half that wore heavy armour.

'Well, having the real upper body of a person will be uncomfortable in its own way.'

Moreover, just because they were small, this didn't mean they were the size of ponies. While running, Quick Wind's shoulders were just a little bit lower than Carack's while he was riding the draco.

In-gong turned his gaze to the front again. He could see the settlement of the centaurs in the distance.

The nomadic lifestyle of the centaurs meant they set up large mobile tents instead of stone or wooden houses. So, from a distance, it felt more like an army camp instead of a village.

‘Do they live with the satyrs?’

In-gong turned his gaze toward Karma who was leading at the front. She was running lightly with the legs of a horse, similar to the centaurs. However, she only had two legs and was only slightly larger than a normal human.

The centaurs relied on the satyrs to do the hard work they couldn’t, while the centaurs defended the satyrs. It was a give and take relationship.

"I will go ahead and spread the news!"

Karma called to In-gong before speeding up. Although she only had two horse legs, her stamina was really amazing.

From the draco next to him, Carack asked,

"Prince, they are preparing for us."

Just as In-gong’s companions saw the centaurs’ residence, the centaurs at the settlement saw In-gong’s group. There were centaurs gathered at the entrance of the wooden fence surrounding their settlement.

‘The centaurs of Enger Plains...’

There were four centaur tribes living on the Enger Plains. The strongest among them was the Mighty Fire clan and the chief of the Mighty Fire tribe also served as the main chief of the three remaining tribes.

The name of the great chieftain was Ferocious Eyes.

If a user was to play Knight Saga as any character, they were sure to face him at least once.

'Not as a friend but as an enemy.'

Ferocious Eyes didn't belong to any faction but he hated Zephyr. This was due to the Day of the Massacre, where he had fought and stood fiercely against Zephyr, who had been the last remaining royal child.

'A straightforward person.'

As the names suggested, his eyes were very fierce. His blunt attitude made it hard to even hold a conversation with him.

'In the game, he was literally an impossible character... but won't it be different here?'

In-gong didn't think it was necessary to fight Ferocious Eyes. It was just like how Chris and Caitlin, who were medium bosses, had become friendly with him. It could be the same with Ferocious Eyes.

"Your eyes are burning with ambition. Roaring, in fact."

Carack said to In-gong who ignored him.

After approximately five minutes, he finally arrived at the centaur settlement of the Mighty Fire tribe.

"Chief Ferocious Eyes."

He would have known who it was even if there had been no introductions. The centaur in the middle of the herd was huge. His lower body was bigger than the others, while his upper body, dressed in leather armour, had shoulders that seemed as wide as the plains.

However, the most striking thing about him were his two hooded eyes. His eyes seemed like he could kill a person with his gaze alone.

In fact, Quick Wind of the scouting group turned his head away like he was avoiding Ferocious Eyes' gaze. Karma wasn't much different as she stared silently at the ground.

However, In-gong was different. He had even endured the gaze of the demon king.

"I am 9th Prince Shutra."



Ferocious Eyes frowned as In-gong talked while staring straight into his eyes. He stared down at In-gong with an expressionless face and said,

"You've had a hard time coming here."

The accent was the same as before but the feeling was different. In-gong smiled and extended his hand. However, the meaning of this was different from when he had done the same thing with Vandal. In-gong shook Ferocious Eyes' hand from aboard the draco.

"I want to hear about the situation quickly. As you know, the scouts encountered a group of casios and I fought with them. The situation doesn't seem normal."

Yesterday, two members of the scouting group had departed first. Therefore, Ferocious Eyes should have already heard the story about the casios.

Ferocious Eyes gazed at In-gong and replied in a low voice,

"Come this way."

Ferocious Eyes turned around, leaving behind disconcerted centaurs who moved quickly. Quick Wind and the scouts were left behind while the centaurs escorted In-gong after Ferocious Eyes.

In-gong, Carack, Karma and the centaurs followed after Ferocious Eyes.

As expected, the place where In-gong was escorted to was Ferocious Eyes' tent. Due to the physical characteristics of the centaurs, the ceiling of the tents, particularly Ferocious Eyes', were high. It felt like he was in Vandal's tent.

In-gong rode the draco to the tent and dismounted in front of it. His eye level lowered and he suddenly felt like a child who had entered the home of a giant.

"Over here."

Karma waited at the entrance while the centaur escorts also stood around the tent.

In-gong swallowed his saliva involuntarily and entered the tent with Carack.

"The Enger Plains."

As soon as In-gong entered, Ferocious Eyes pointed a large map on the table. Fortunately, there were satyrs in the centaur settlement, so the table was at a height that In-gong could see.

As In-gong sat in front of the table, Ferocious Eyes pointed to the map with a stick.

"This is our Mighty Fire tribe here. Over there are the Heavy Winds, Heavy Rain and Rough Night tribes."

There was more distance between the tribes than he had thought. He hadn't expected a tribe to be right next door, but it seemed like it would take a considerable amount of time to travel between each tribe.

Ferocious Eyes pointed to the north this time.

"This is where the casios should be. However, the place where the scouts encountered the casios is far south of this area."

It was even further south than the settlement of the Mighty Fire tribe.

"I had scouts look around. I don't think all of them have gone down this way but there is something wrong."

Just like an annual event, hundreds of casios showed up at this time every year. If they moved to south all at once, the centaurs would have noticed.

"Time is needed to gather more information. Please wait. Three days later, the warriors of all four tribes will gather in one place. Then we will be able to defeat them with a single strike."

It was an explanation that only contained the necessary things. In-gong nodded.

"I understand. I will wait."

In fact, there wasn't anything urgent. The group of casios weren't in front of him at this moment.

At the end of those words, In-gong and Carack stared at Ferocious Eyes while Ferocious Eyes looked down at In-gong.

There was a subtle silence. Fortunately, that didn't last long.

"9th Prince."

"Huh?"

Ferocious Eyes' eyebrows twitched, then he asked In-gong in the same tone as before,

"Did you really smash the head of a casios with one punch?"

"Uh, that?"

Ferocious Eyes' eyebrows kept moving while waiting for the answer.

"I am just asking."

Carack's eyes narrowed and it was the same for In-gong.

'Now I understand.'

His eyes were obviously scary and his tone was also tough. However, his eyebrows showed that he wasn't offended.

In-gong replied in a cheerful tone.

"The technique is Beast Authority. If you want, I will show it to you at a later time."

He actually used Divine Beast Authority, but it was similar to Beast Authority.

Ferocious Eyes' eyebrows twitched again.

"I'm looking forward to it."

It was the same tone as before but it sounded quite pleasant to In-gong.

When they exited the tent with Ferocious Eyes, the satyrs were waiting with the centaurs. Unlike Karma, these satyrs had the legs of a goat and guided In-gong to their accommodation.

In-gong's tent was located near Ferocious Eyes and seemed to be for a satyr as the ceiling wasn't high. There were many carpets with colourful patterns and the walls were padded with thick cloths. It had a cozy atmosphere.

The satyrs seated In-gong at an appropriate place. Carack entered the tent one step later and sat down beside In-gong.

"50 centaurs will be assigned under Prince. Today is a rest day and you will be introduced to them in the morning."

The Mighty Fire tribe was estimated to have approximately 300 centaur fighters, so 50 wasn't a small number. Moreover, every single one of them counted as a cavalry member. It was a far different treatment from when he had been assigned 30 orc fighters.

In the original missions, children of the demon king had often played a secondary role. It wasn't Chris but Vandal who had led the main army to subjugate the Red Lightning tribe.

"Will Karma continue to be our guide?"

In-gong asked as he looked at the entrance of the tent. Although Karma hadn't entered the tent, she had accompanied them to it.

Carack nodded.

"I think it is similar to my case. She's a person assigned to Prince. If Prince Chris or Princess Caitlin came without any soldiers, local warriors would be assigned to similar roles."

"Hmmm, is that so?"

Then would she end up joining him like Carack?

He hadn't confirmed Karma's combat ability yet, but he knew she had incredible

running ability and stamina. She would be good as a scout or messenger.

"Ambition is burning often in your eyes today."

Carack said, nodding. He had quick wits. In-gong then asked Carack,

"What do you think about Ferocious Eyes?"

He wasn't asking about Ferocious Eyes' personality. He just wanted to hear the answer that Carack would give.

"In my view, it seemed like he liked Prince."

"Did you see it as well?"

The eyebrows was a sign of his favorability. Carack laughed at In-gong.

"It was the same with General Vandal. Prince seems to be quite popular."

"This is something I am blessed with."

He was under the command of Ferocious Eyes. Would it turn out like it had with Vandal?

"That is enough talking. We will find out more about the situation after dinner."

That was a macho remark. Maybe it wasn't a blessing to meet Carack?

"Oh, I hope you suffer."

"Be careful. If you are too late, I won't hesitate to warn Karma away."

Carack had to get in the last word as he left the tent. In-gong's gaze followed after Carack. Then after Carack walked out, he sat down and stretched out his legs.

'I have become stronger.'

In-gong could see it after crushing the casios. If he thought about his future work, he would come up with the correct training method.

‘Divine Beast Authority.’

In-gong relaxed and started circulating his aura.

In-gong’s aura was white; it was a stream of white light.

In-gong led the aura and the aura led him. The flow of the aura was so natural, there was no place where it was blocked or tangled.

Conquest.

The golden-crowned female with white hair, one red eye and one blue eye.

In-gong’s aura showed this abnormality. It seemed to drift away from everything else in the world as it sensed a different flow.

There was a voice in In-gong’s head but it wasn’t the voice of the white woman. It was a voice heard from outside, not deep in In-gong’s soul.

It wasn’t Carack or Karma. It was something other than that.

In-gong slowly opened his eyes. Darkness was in front of him but the darkness was different from a deep room. He saw the scenery in the tent. Everything looked like a spark to his eyes.

In-gong swallowed his saliva inadvertently. It wasn't a dream. He was conscious.

Then what was it?

In-gong was about to stand up and cry out to Carack. Still, there was something beckoning him beyond his view.

A voice.

Someone was calling In-gong.

In-gong breathed in deeply. The white aura of conquest wound around In-gong, seeming as though it was trying to protect him.

Who was it? At that moment, In-gong looked at his right arm. Earth Quaker, which was supposed to be in the inventory, was on his arm. A red and yellow light was moving like it was snarling.

It seemed to know something. In-gong settled his mind, took a step forward and the landscape around him changed. In-gong wasn't in the tent but on a wide grassland.

The sky and everything around In-gong was black. In front of him, hair fluttered like it was blowing in a breeze.

There was a beautiful woman. Her hair was very long while her face was white and her eyes looked very mysterious. It was a woman who didn't seem like a person.

Earth Quaker, which acknowledged In-gong as its master, glowed once again. For the first time, In-gong could guess what the woman in front of him was.

She told In-gong,

"I am a piece of Ainkel. There is something I want to say to you who has Enkidu's strength."

Watcher Ainkel, one of the six dragons said to have the same power as a god!

She took one step closer to In-gong.

# Chapter 46

## Advent #4

There were six elder dragons in the world of Knight Saga.

They had the same power as a god, but the users of Knight Sage treated the elder dragons like they were just an insignificant background. The reason was simple: only one of the six elder dragons, Queian, the guardian, affected the game directly.

'He only appeared indirectly.'

Queian, the guardian, also known as a saint dragon, was a strong supporter of Locke, the warrior. He had given Locke the strongest sword, 'the Warrior's Sword', and Queian had also arranged the best teachers for him.

The remaining five dragons were only mentioned occasionally in item descriptions such as for the Thunder Light Anvil.

The elder dragons.

They were an existence that probably couldn't be confronted in Knight Saga.

However, In-gong had a little bit of contact with them.

This was done through Earth Quaker, the gauntlet with the enchantment of the great Enkidu.

A piece of Ainkel, the watcher, had showed up in front of In-gong.

He wondered why. Moreover, why did Ainkel want to speak with him?

In-gong observed Ainkel. Dressed in clothes of blue leaves and stems, she was the manifestation of something other than a human. The ears that protruded from her hair were pointed at the ends like a pixie's, while deer antlers sprouted from her head.



"I am a piece of Ainkel, a fragment of her that fell on Enger Plains."

Her voice was as beautiful and mysterious as her appearance. However, the contents didn't seem right.

She was a piece of Ainkel. Moreover, her expression was frozen.

Whether she read In-gong's mind or had simply guessed, the woman in front of him, the piece of Ainkel, nodded.

"Yes, Watcher Ainkel is already dead. I am a piece of her strong will that has remained in the world."

She hadn't emerge in Knight Saga because she was already dead? However, what was the reason behind a dragon dying? Had she died from old age?

It was a story that he would have ignored in the past, but he couldn't now because he had seen Enkidu. Such a huge mountain-like creature wouldn't have simply died.

However, the piece of Ainkel had nothing more to say about Ainkel's death.

She frowned and said,

"There is no time. I encountered a miracle that was formed through layers of coincidences. I found you due to Enkidu's power in that weapon. You moved closer to this direction and my call was answered, so this encounter could be created."

She seemed to be talking about the moment that Earth Quaker amplified In-gong's aura.

"I am a fragment of Watcher Ainkel. Over a long period of time, I was reborn as the guardian of Enger Plains. The children of Enger Plains call me Green Wind."

'Green Wind!

In-gong knew that name. It was the name that the centaurs and satyrs prayed to. According to Knight Saga's setting, it was due to Green Wind that Enger Plains could be protected.

The piece of Ainkel, Green Wind, stepped closer to In-gong. The surrounding scenery then changed once more.

It had become a small stone temple in the middle of the grasslands. It was a simple place where people prayed and left.

"This is my home and it contains the source of energy of Watcher Ainkel's fragment."

At Green Wind's words, the red and yellow light rose again from Earth Quaker, which was on In-gong's right arm. Green Wind stared straight into In-gong's eyes and said,

"The monsters coming down from the north are heading to my home. They intend to destroy my home and devour my spirit, then Enger Plains will be lost. My children will also be in great danger."

"Are you referring to the casios?"

In-gong asked for the first time. Green Wind shook her head roughly.

"It isn't just them! It is different from the previous times. There are those who descended with the casios."

Green Wind hugged her shoulders, then the surrounding scenery changed once again. There were wild barking sounds as the casios ran between giant monsters. The monsters each had a head that was like a goat's while their upper body was like an ogre and their lower body had four beast legs like a centaur. It was like looking at a huge reptile.

It wasn't just a fantasy. At this moment, they were actually moving.

"My children alone can't stop the threat from the north, but you are different. You already have Enkidu's power, so you will be able to gain strength from Ainkel's fragment. With that strength, you can stop the threat from the north. Save the Enger Plains and my children."

Green Wind's tone was as soft as the wind. She grabbed In-gong's hand.

"There is no time. They are coming already. Please hurry."

In-gong's consciousness flew into the sky at that moment and he had an overview of the Enger Plains from Green Wind's viewpoint. He could see the small temple and the path of the monsters descending from the north.

"May the blessing of the wind be with you."

Green Wind kissed In-gong's forehead gently and in that moment, everything disappeared in a flash of light.

"Prince!"

In-gong's eyes flashed open and Carack and Karma were in front of his eyes. The tent was lit up by a lamp.

Instead of answering Carack, In-gong gazed at his right arm. Instead of Earth Quaker, his right hand was holding a small piece of green light.

"A piece of Green Wind."

In-gong mumbled and activated the mini-map hastily. Even if he hadn't been there yet, he could confirm it.

The small temple was located in the northeast. The casios were moving from the southeast, so it was no wonder the centaurs didn't notice.

As Ferocious Eyes said, the centaurs were watching the north where the casios had always been.

In-gong guessed the distance roughly and swallowed his saliva. Like Green Wind had said, he needed to hurry.

"Get up, Carack. Prepare to fight. I have to go to Ferocious Eyes right now."

Karma was baffled by the sudden words, but In-gong's knight Carack was different. Without any doubts, he jumped up and started moving.

As In-gong left the tent decisively with Carack and Karma, he gazed up at the sky. It was late afternoon and close to twilight.

"Ferocious Eyes is in his tent. Go with Karma. I will prepare the dracos."

Now that the situation was like this, Karma no longer showed any confusion. She headed to Ferocious Eyes' tent with In-gong.

"Your Highness?"

The centaurs guarding Ferocious Eyes' tent were surprised by In-gong's sudden appearance but couldn't raise their weapons to stop him. In-gong entered the tent and said immediately,

"I received a revelation from Green Wind. We have to go and fight right now."

He presented the piece of Green Wind to stop any arguments. Ferocious Eyes' eyebrows raised as he took the piece of Green Wind In-gong received in the dream.

The centaurs and satyrs around Ferocious Eyes recognized Green Wind's power. One of them asked in a confused voice,

"H-how?"

It seemed like he wanted to know. He wanted to understand why the 9th Prince received Green Wind's revelation.

However, it was the reality. Ferocious Eyes returned the piece of Green Wind to In-gong and asked,

"Where should we go?"

"Tribe Chief?"

The centaurs cried out with amazement. The promised meeting day was three days later. All the tribe warriors would gather then.

However, Ferocious Eyes only looked at In-gong.

"There is a small temple in the northeast. We have to go there. Green Wind is in danger."

Ferocious Eyes was also aware of the temple in the northeast. It had never been considered an important place but Ferocious Eyes didn't show any doubts.

"I believe Prince."

The meaning of Ferocious Eyes' words was obvious. The centaurs knew him and didn't cry out any longer. They just ran out of the tent and blew their horns. It was the signal for battle.

In-gong exited the tent with Ferocious Eyes and saw Carack leading two dracos.

"Prince!"

In-gong equipped Earth Quaker on his right arm and got on top of the draco. Karma brought In-gong out of the settlement.

The situation was urgent. He had never imagined this would happen when he first left the Demon King's Palace.

It had been a direct mission from the demon king.

Did Mitra know that the situation would unfold like this? Moreover, if he had known, why did he choose In-gong instead of the other princes and princesses?

He had a few more questions.

Why were the casios showing this behaviour now? How had he known about Green Wind's dwelling when even the centaurs hadn't known?

There was something - one correct answer that existed for all his questions.

In-gong's thoughts were interrupted. The centaurs were ready to depart. They were in a rush, so the supplies weren't perfect.

Ferocious Eyes blew a huge horn. In-gong and 300 centaurs started running behind him.

The maneuverability of the centaur troops, who were all cavalry, was tremendous. In-gong had marched with orcs during the subjugation of Red Lightning tribe, so he

realized the difference in mobility between the cavalry and infantry.

While they were sprinting, sunset was gradually getting closer. Karma, the only infantry among the troops, kept sweating but stayed by In-gong's side.

The sight of so many centaurs on the plains was extraordinary. Those who were running at the front found the small temple covered in green light, unlike its usual state. They also found a group of casios a little further away.

"Oh, my god."

"Green Wind."

All doubts about their chief's orders were gone. Some of them couldn't resist the impulse to look at In-gong.

Ferocious Eyes remained calm. The centaurs gradually lowered the speed of their advance and measured the number of casios.

It was estimated that there were 400~500. Moreover, it was the first time they had seen the monsters that were mixed in with the casios.

Due to the large numbers and unknown enemies, they would have normally avoided fighting. However, this wasn't a fight that could be avoided.

"Prince, they are baffled by our appearance."

Ferocious Eyes stopped and said to him. It was the last breath before the battle began.

In-gong gazed at the casios as well and he remembered Green Wind's words.

She didn't say to simply fight. In-gong had to absorb the remaining fragment of Ainkel to defeat the northern threat.

There was something in the temple. In-gong decided to tell Ferocious Eyes.

"I am going to the temple. Don't let them approach it."

Ferocious Eyes didn't ask anymore. He just took out a bow and said to In-gong,

"I will give you nine people. Stay safe."

A horn sounded between the centaurs. Ferocious Eyes and the centaurs started running in a diagonal direction like they were blocking the temple, while In-gong ran straight to the temple. Carack, Karma and several centaurs followed In-gong.

Instead of the sound of a horn, there were a large roar among the casios. In the sky, twilight was spreading.

# Chapter 47

## Advent #5

In history, cavalry could be divided into two types.

There were those who used their mobility to attack and depart repeatedly or those who joined together as a mighty stone cavalry to push behind enemy lines..

The centaurs of the Mighty Fire tribe were closer to cavalry archers.

The centaurs, including Ferocious Eyes, pulled their bows and fired. Shooting a bow on a horse was a task that required high training but it was a necessity for the centaurs.

In-gong required them to draw the casios' attention, not defeat them.

As the casios had more numbers than them, Ferocious Eyes didn't want to rush recklessly at the casios. So, he fired arrows instead. The arrows flew in a large arc.

The rain of arrows pouring from the sky was enough to cause pressure, but the casios just ran forward and didn't avoid the arrows.

The ones at the front were hit by the arrows, but a far greater number of casios passed through the rain of arrows. They were either being controlled or didn't care about death. Some of them even caught the arrows in their mouths.

The centaurs listened to each other and shot arrows in succession. Dozens of casios died whenever the rain of arrows poured out. However, the distance between the casios and the centaurs was decreasing rapidly.

After the third arrow, Ferocious Eyes switched from a bow to a spear. The casios had a mobility comparable to the centaurs' because they were rushing to their deaths.

They didn't care about melee warfare.



Ferocious Eyes shouted angrily.

His roars shook the heavens and the earth but In-gong didn't look back at Ferocious Eyes and the battlefield. In-gong used the mini-map to navigate the draco.

A part of the group of casios split off and headed toward the temple. It seemed like In-gong wouldn't be able to avoid a struggle.

'There are a lot of them.'

He guessed that there were dozens of them. It was possible because compared to In-gong and the centaurs, the casios had superior numbers.

Carack, who was on the draco next to In-gong, asked him,

"Prince! Do you just have to enter the temple?"

In-gong had to do precisely that. Green Wind didn't tell him the specifics of the power, only that the power was sleeping in the small temple.

However, In-gong just nodded. He replied like a king talking to his men.

"Yes! We will be victorious if we arrive at the temple!"

Carack laughed at In-gong's words. He held the dwarf axe and shouted excitedly,

"Then we will pierce through!"

Carack raised the speed of the draco and gave a battle cry as a wedge formation centering around In-gong formed naturally.

"Karaa!"

It was a warrior's cry that raised the spirits of allies. In-gong stabbed the air with a dwarf dagger.

"Below the King's Flag!"

It was the first time he had used Below the King's Flag since securing the Thunder

Light Anvil. The level of Conquest and Below the King's Flag had risen.

A large flag made of pure white light unfurled behind In-gong's back. The light spread out to cover Carack as well as Karma and the centaurs running with In-gong.

Karma, who was within the range of Below the King's Flag, felt a spark of vitality through her body. The centaurs went wild and jumped against the wind.

In-gong felt the change. All those affected by Below the King's Flag had become one.

"Pierce through!"

"Kuraha!"

Carack replied to In-gong's command. Surrounded by white light, In-gong's troops were like a sharp arrow.

The 33 casios and three creatures, which seemed to be drake ogres, were like an illusion blocking In-gong from reaching Green Wind. Instead of slowing down, Carack just swung his axe as hard as he could.

A violent clash took place. Blood and flesh scattered in the air as there was a howl.

In-gong instinctively realized something - it would be the end if they stopped. They had to keep penetrating through.

Karma jumped up and trampled on the head of a casios. Carack moved his axe like a madman as he opened the path while the centaurs blocked access with their spears.

The casios weren't caught quietly. They ran and tackled some centaurs down to the ground. The centaurs were reinforced by Below the King's Flag but they weren't invincible. The sharp teeth and claws of the casios caught the centaurs.

Horrible screams hit his ears but he couldn't stop. Carack roared loudly,

"Prince! Go!"

The road was opened and the small temple was right in front of him.

"Kuratha!"

One drake ogre cried out urgently and tried to block In-gong's way, but it was futile. Karma jumped up to step on the drake ogre's head while Carack's axe struck his side. The drake ogre, who was much bigger than Carack, lost his balance and fell sideways.

In-gong rode through the open gap. He was now at the very front and before his eyes, he saw an drake ogre hitting the barrier of green light around the small temple.

"Green Wind's barrier!"

One of the centaurs following In-gong cried out. In-gong ran straight and pulled back his right arm. A red and yellow light emanated from Earth Quaker as the draco used its instantaneous speed. The drake ogre hurriedly turned around but In-gong had already reached him and In-gong didn't spare his aura.

The power of an explosion!

The Earth Quaker's amplified white aura hit the drake ogre. Unlike how the casios had exploded, the drake ogre didn't explode, but he was pushed back and fell to the ground.

The wall of green light didn't block In-gong and his party. In-gong passed through the wall first, followed by Carack, Karma and the centaurs.

Carack once again knew what he had to do. Instead of entering the temple along with In-gong, he held his axe and waited at the entrance of the temple with Karma and the centaurs.

Unlike the party, the casios and drake ogres couldn't go through the barrier, so they were smashing against it.

'Hurry! Enkidu's equipment will lead you!'

Green Wind's voice was heard in In-gong's head. In-gong jumped down from the draco and rushed deep into the temple with Enkidu's magic power in Earth Quaker leading the way.

A large tree was growing in the middle of a flat place in the deepest part of the small

temple. Despite being inside the building, the tree with its roots and branches was be enough to support the entire small temple.

Enkidu's magic power resonated. In-gong reached out with his right arm which was wearing Earth Quaker and Ainkel's magic power was released from deep within the tree.

Then In-gong was standing in front of something that looked like a huge tree but wasn't one. Dozens of tree trunks covered in green light were joined together. It seemed like a flower bud that was opening.

In-gong took a deep breath. Every time a tree opened, Ainkel's magic power became stronger and Earth Quaker emitted more light.

Finally, the thing hidden deep in the tree was revealed to In-gong. It was a fist sized green stone located between dozens of trees. In-gong realized what it was the moment he saw it shining like a jewel.

'Dragon heart!'

It was the source of magic power that every dragon had. It symbolised that they had all descended from the great kings.

It wasn't a complete chunk. Green Wind had said that only a fragment was here. However, this wasn't from an ordinary dragon; it was a piece of the elder dragon, Ainkel.

The green light winding around the trees took the shape of Green Wind. She showed up in front of In-gong and explained in an urgent voice,

"A long time ago, Watcher Ainkel made the Enger Plains from a desert using great magic. This temple is located in the center of that magic."

It had indeed been the feat of an elder dragon. Green Wind grabbed In-gong's hand and said,

"I came from the fragment of Ainkel but I have changed as many years have passed since I was born. Please wake up Ainkel's magic that remains in this temple. She left the magic to watch over the Enger Plains and its children."

Once Green Wind's hand touched him, In-gong was able to grasp the situation outside the small temple. The green light barrier around the temple was on the verge of collapse and a fierce clash was occurring between Ferocious Eyes' centaurs and the casios.

In-gong breathed in deeply and recalled the incident with the Thunder Light Anvil.

This time he didn't have Felicia and Caitlin but he had to do it, even if he was alone.

In-gong stretched out his right arm and raised his hand over the green stone that was a piece of Ainkel.

Since the beginning of time, there had been six great dragons in the world.

One of them...

She had been born from the wind that swept the world.

Her name had been Ainkel, who watched. Unlike Enkidu who was a tyrant, she was a gentle and beautiful female who watched those born on the earth.

In-gong saw an illusion of a dragon covered in green scales. There was no sense of intimidation and fear like when he had seen Enkidu. She was huge but also beautiful and natural. She became like a cloud in the sky or an island in the sea as she became part of the landscape.

Her green eyes emitted a warm light as she gazed at In-gong. He closed his eyes from the warmth of those green eyes.

[Dragon Characters Lv1 has been learnt.]

A clear voice was heard in his head. At the same time, In-gong understood some of the magic left behind by Ainkel.

In-gong woke up through Enkidu's magic power and heard the wind. The new magic power was wrapped entirely around the small temple.

Green Wind hugged her shoulders. It had been a long time since she had felt Ainkel's magic, so she was thrilled.

She looked down at Enger Plains from the sky. The miracle she had hoped for was happening. Large tree trunks sprouted out all around the small temple. Ainkel's soldiers rose from the ground and started to shape themselves.

They were treants.

It started with one but soon expanded to dozens. They hadn't uprooted and taken the first steps yet, but it was only a matter of time.

The casios and drake ogres were noticeably confused. The drake ogres, who had been fighting the centaurs fiercely, quickly turned toward the temple but dozens of treants were already between them and the temple.

It had become like this. It had been risky but it was just in time. There had been a large sacrifice but the Enger Plains were now guarded.

Green Wind sighed with relief and returned to the temple. She gave a deep bow of gratitude to In-gong.

However, she was shocked when she returned to the temple. Without realising it, she cried out with amazement.

In-gong still had his hands on the piece of Ainkel. Although the spell had already been activated in response to Enkidu's magic, the connection between In-gong and the piece of Ainkel wasn't cut off. The magic power remaining in the piece of Ainkel was being sucked into In-gong's hands.

Why? What was happening?

There was only one answer.

Conquest.

It was the white woman's voice.

She wore a golden crown and appreciated Green Wind's shock. She whispered into In-

gong's soul.

'Rule.

Make them submit.

Even if it is an elder dragon, make them kneel before you.

You, the Conquest Knight.'

In-gong didn't stop. He dominated the power left behind in the piece of Ainkel.

# Chapter 48

## Advent #6

A miracle was happening outside the small temple.

There was a flash of light and great trees rose where there had been nothing before. They formed the shape of men with two hands.

Karma swallowed her saliva as the roots of the treants moved. She had a little bit of druid knowledge, so she was thrilled by the new force appearing on Enger Plains.

"Green Wind."

The centaurs next to Karma expressed their heartfelt admiration. Some closed their eyes and prayed with their hands together. The casios and drake ogres, both of whom were struggling with the green barrier, also stared at the treants. The casios, who weren't even afraid of the rain of arrows, felt their bodies start shaking.

Even the smallest of the treants were at least five or six metres tall. It seemed as though a forest was moving.

The drake ogres screamed while the casios raised their heads to the sky and roared. The centaurs, however, shouted Green Wind's name.

In the midst of all the noise, Carack heard something else. Even though something wonderful was happening in front of his eyes, he looked back reflexively while holding his axe.

Deep inside the small temple...

The effect of Below the King's Flag was already gone. However, Carack was In-gong's knight and could feel it.

"Prince."



In-gong's power was becoming stronger.

If Enkidu's power was destruction, then Ainkel's was life.

No matter what it was, the power of an elder dragon couldn't be stolen easily.

The power of the dragon had been frozen in the piece of the dragon heart, so only a dragon could accept the magic power of another dragon.

However, Conquest wasn't that simple. It was the power of dominance.

Ainkel's magic power didn't resist. It accepted In-gong's dominance.

Ainkel's magic flowed so naturally toward In-gong that he was slightly taken aback.

The power of a dragon entered In-gong's body and naturally, the magic power attacked In-gong's body. In-gong's flesh was too fragile to endure a dragon's magic power.

However, the whole process didn't end with destruction.

[Your level has risen.]

In-gong received a vast amount of experience for the achievement, so he gained a level. A pure white light restored In-gong's destroyed body.

In-gong screamed painfully as he was surrounded by the white light. This was because Ainkel's magic power destroyed his barely recovered body once again.

Then In-gong's level rose once again.

[Your level has risen.]  
[Your level has risen.]

Exactly three times...

That was the number of times that the repetition of destruction and regeneration had

occurred. It was like breaking an old bowl and creating a new one repeatedly.

The clear voice of a woman resonated in In-gong's head.

[Passive skill - Dragon Lineage Lv1 has been acquired.]  
[Dragon Lineage Lv1 skill Dragon Blood has been learnt.]

It was a modification of his body. The dragon's magic power evolved his flesh.

The power of Conquest and Protagonist Body made that possible. It developed into a new transformation.

[The level of Protagonist Body has risen.]  
[The Protagonist Body Lv2 skill Hundred Poisons Resistance has been learnt.]  
[The level of Magic Power Control has risen.]  
[You have acquired the power of life.]

The body reconstruction was completed. The white and green light swirling around In-gong's body scattered in the air.

In-gong opened his eyes slowly. His status window was floating in front of him.

[Name: Shutra Ignus]

[Age: 14]  
[Level: 17]  
[Species: Gandharva]  
[Occupation: Protagonist]  
[Secondary Occupation: Conquest Knight Lv2/ Dragon Humanoid]  
[Uniqueness: Prince/ Conquest Knight/ Dragon Humanoid]  
[Properties: Life]

Strength: 45  
Intelligence: 45  
Agility: 45

Talent: 45  
Persistence: 45  
Durability: 45  
Mental Power: 45  
Magic Power: 45  
Charm: 32  
  
Extra Points: 32

His basic stats had increased as a whole. There was the life property that hadn't existed before, in addition to a secondary occupation and uniqueness.

'Dragon humanoid.'

He had already seen it in Knight Saga. Despite being half draconian and half sura, it was a characteristic of Zephyr who had awakened his dragon blood.

Zephyr, who inherited the lineage of a dragon.

Locke, who inherited a dragon's soul.

In-gong had the blood of a gandharva and sura. However, he was now ambushed by Ainkel's power.

[Dragon Humanoid Lv1]

[The lineage of a dragon, the descendant of the Great King, has awakened in the flesh of a son of man. A dragon's magic power is different.]

[Dragon Blood Lv1]

[The power of the Great Dragon has awakened in your body. All stats will rise temporarily and strengthen the dragon's magic power.]

[Hundred Poisons Resistance Lv1.]

[Resistance to poison has increased greatly. (Can be upgraded to Thousand Poisons

In-gong took a deep breath. Once he closed and opened his eyes again, the status and skill windows disappeared and he saw Green Wind's face.

In a voice mixed with confusion and wonder, she said,

"You have obtained the flesh and spirit of a dragon. I can feel the strength of Ainkel coming from you."

Ainkel's remaining piece of power had disappeared. All of the power had been consumed to reconstruct In-gong's flesh and spirit.

However, Green Wind didn't feel like it was a waste. It was a power that had been sleeping for many years without anyone using it.

The magic in the small temple and Enger Plains were in good shape, so Green Wind's dream had come true. Then it was good. The important thing right now was that Enger Plains was protected.

Moreover, Green Wind had intuitively sensed something. She couldn't explain the rationale, but she understood that this was a tipping point.

Watcher Ainkel had accepted In-gong. Instead of resisting or rejecting, she gave him her magic power.

Green Wind didn't know anything other than that. She nodded with satisfaction.

"After receiving Watcher Ainkel's power, please watch over my children and the Enger Plains."

The treants had shown up but the battle wasn't over. Even at this moment, the casios and centaurs were still clashing.

In-gong nodded slowly. He lifted his right arm and the red and yellow lights seemed to growl. It was like a cry saying it wanted to destroy the enemy quickly.

It was as expected from the Great Tyrant Enkidu. In-gong turned around without any

hesitation and ran out of the temple.

"Prince!"

Carack, who was staring at the temple, welcomed In-gong first. In-gong responded with a smile.

"Carack!"

Carack's expression became calm. He really was the best knight in many ways.

"Your Highness!"

"Ohh, Your Highness the 9th Prince! The agent of Green Wind!"

The centaurs, who noticed belatedly, gazed at In-gong with shining eyes. They weren't pretty girls like Caitlin but men who were staring at In-gong with starry eyes.

"It is wonderful! As expected from His Highness!"

Karma also praised In-gong. She didn't know what happened inside the temple, but it was obvious that the miracle had occurred shortly after In-gong entered the temple. For Karma, In-gong wasn't a mere prince but a great being who had caused a miracle.

He was pleased with the respect and praise that he hadn't receive a lot of during the Red Lightning subjugation, but he couldn't enjoy it forever.

In-gong looked beyond Green Wind's barrier that was further enhanced by Ainkel's magic.

'I am grateful for the praise.'

The forest was moving. Common sense seemed to crumble in front of the trees that swung their branches as they moved forward.

There was a battle going on in front of the small temple. The giant treants that were six or seven metres tall moved their branches like a whip while their roots were tangled up with the casios' legs.

In-gong opened the mini-map and gazed at it. Dozens of treants had appeared simultaneously where the centaurs, led by Ferocious Eyes, were fighting.

As expected, a melee was unfolding. The red dots and blue dots were scrambled together. Naturally, the damage was forced to grow.

‘There are three critical areas on the battlefield.’

One place was the left side of the battlefield and near the entrance to the temple.

Dozens of treants and drake ogres were facing each other.

On the right side of the battlefield, the centaurs and casios were mixed together.

In-gong knew where his power was needed most. He needed to break the morale of the entire group of casios.

‘A power is manipulating the casios. We must crush that power that is coming from the north.’

A purple wind wrapped around the casios.

Green Wind’s voice went into In-gong’s head and inspired him. Green Wind didn’t stop with In-gong, but also delivered the message to the treants.

Among the drake ogres, there was one particularly huge one. The upper body of the ogre was covered in blue scales while the lower half was larger than even the biggest casios.

The goat head had four horns protruding from it and his eyes were blood red.

He was the boss among the drake ogres. He was holding giant sickles in his hands and cutting the treants like he was harvesting them.

In-gong’s gaze moved towards the center of the battlefield.

He was focused on that. In-gong had to defeat the drake ogre’s leader in order to improve the situation.

It wouldn't be easy but the idea didn't see too reckless. He could do it by himself now.

No, he had to do it.

"Carack, I will leave the temple to you."

In-gong ordered. The small temple was still important. The magic moving the treants was done in the small temple.

Thus, he told Carack to protect it. Since waking up in the tent, he had always been behind Carack. However, this time he was going alone. He ignored the passion behind him and only concentrated on the battle in front of him.

Carack was confused by In-gong's command, but it was only for a moment. He sensed the genuineness in In-gong and gave a cool smile.

"Go!"

A simple shout, but this was more dependable.

The centaurs were unable to keep up with the situation and blinked with confusion. Karma was also baffled but as the woman he picked to be his number two subordinate, she quickly realized what was going on.

"Come back safely! I will defend the temple!"

She would guard the temple with Carack.

In-gong nodded. The draco then approached In-gong. Despite being young, he felt like the draco was very clever.

'I'll have to name him after the fight.'

In-gong laughed before mounting the draco. He controlled his breathing and triggered Aura.

A white aura flared up like fire and the power of Conquest was activated softly.

'It is my first boss fight alone.'

In-gong formed a fist. He crossed the green barrier and headed towards the drake ogres.



# Chapter 49

## Advent #7

A one-on-one battle on a typical battlefield was difficult to achieve.

There were many things going on.

The first was the distance. It was common to have a considerable distance between both camps. In the meantime, there were soldiers in each camp. Therefore, it was difficult to have a long encounter with someone from the very beginning.

Most commanders avoided a one-on-one confrontation unless it was a special case. The role of a leader was to command the soldiers on the battlefield. A battlefield wouldn't end with just a single death. In the worst case scenario, the person would be killed in the battle itself.

'That is a common war story.'

However, Knight Saga was different. Commanders avoided one-on-one battles for these reasons, but In-gong knew of crucial variables.

These included aura, magic, psychic powers, divine powers and various physical abilities.

There were some commanders in Knight Saga with enough combat power to be a one man army.

It was the same for General Vandal and Chris and Caitlin of the lycanthropes.

'Hitman unit.'

They were independent troops that targeted enemy commanders on the battlefield.

The biggest reasons why Chris and Caitlin were called bloody monsters was because they managed the hitman units in very extreme ways.

It was through a sudden breakthrough. They crushed all the obstacles blocking their way and rushed in to kill the enemy.

Of course, Chris and Caitlin were the ones who usually acted as the hitman units.

In-gong's eyes were sharp. At this moment, he had to act similarly to the two of them.

'I will do it in a more refined way.'

The draco ran forward. It was the border of twilight and night, so the sky was red, yellow and dark.

In-gong glanced in front of him and at the mini-map.

The drake ogre he targeted was at the very front. There were drake ogres around him, but In-gong didn't need to cross an army to get to him.

'Open the way.'

He would then make a stage where a frontal confrontation was possible. He had already planned the method in his head.

"Green Wind."

When he called her name, a soft light glowed from his chest. Green Wind's voice was heard in In-gong's head... No, the illusion of Green Wind stood next to In-gong. In-gong didn't explain but she understood his intent.

"Son of Ainkel, I will follow you."

Leading the treants, this secondary part would be done by Green Wind.

In-gong reached out toward Green Wind. It was as natural as when he first got his hands on Enkidu's power.

"Please cooperate."

Green Wind sighed like it couldn't be helped, then nodded with a smile that was

reminiscent of Ainkel.

“I will accept.”

Green Wind didn't avoid In-gong's hands. Rather, she opened her arms and embraced In-gong.

The power of Conquest was triggered. Green Wind allowed it and temporarily went under In-gong's control.

Green Wind turned into light and wrapped around In-gong's arms and legs. The green light mixed in with the pure white aura, causing In-gong to feel the power of the wind coming from his body.

“Open the path!”

The command was passed on and the treants followed In-gong's command silently. In-gong manipulated the battlefield using the mini-map quickly and accurately.

The treants moved in unison to push the drake ogres out of the way. The drake ogre leader, who was wielding his scythe in a crazed manner, soon realized that he was on his own. There were still drake ogres and treants on the battlefield, but he was obviously alone.

Mustafa was the leader of the drake ogres. Instead of rushing toward the treants, he read the situation instinctively and noticed the significance of the open path.

A smile formed on Mustafa's goat-like face. Rather, he seemed to like this situation as he roared at In-gong.

It seemed to shake the entire battlefield. However, In-gong just smiled firmly at the war cry. Sweat was flowing down his back but he stared straight at Mustafa instead of running away.

‘You can do it. You will win, my temporary master.’

Green Wind whispered. Despite the fact that a desperate situation was in front of him, In-gong thought it was foolish to say such words to him.

However, he relaxed thanks to that. In-gong thought of the reason he was targeting Mustafa.

It was to win. He was here because he was confident he could win the fight.

“Dragon Blood.”

He had the special skill of a dragon humanoid. The dragon power located in In-gong's body and soul was provoked.

His aura and magic power were strengthened. His stats had also all increased. He didn't open the status window but it was obvious they had jumped by at least 10%.

Moreover, Dragon Blood had an unexpected efficacy.

Earth Quaker gave a low growl. Red and yellow light emitted through the black armour and it transformed into a more aggressive form.

Earth Quaker contained the power of Enkidu. It was natural that it would respond to a dragon humanoid. This could be called the true form of Earth Quaker.

[Earth Quaker's internal skill - Gigantic Piston Lv1 has been acquired.]  
[Earth Quaker has opened some of its true power. The effect of Earth Quaker will be recalibrated.]  
[Strength has increased by 20.]  
[Agility has increased by 15.]  
[Persistence has increased by 20.]  
[The levels of Magic Power Control and Aura have risen by one.]

Green Wind didn't stay still either and In-gong received her blessing.

[Strength has increased by 10%.]  
[Agility has increased by 10%.]  
[Durability has increased by 10%.]  
[Persistence has increased by 10%.]  
[Protection of the Wind is activated. Your movements have improved.]  
[Grassland Reclamation is activated. Healing of injuries will speed up.]

[Protection of the Wind Lv1 has been learnt.]

[Grassland Reclamation Lv1 has been learnt.]

A clear voice was heard constantly in his head. He felt uncomfortable due to the significant rise in ability.

However, In-gong didn't panic. His new Conquest abilities had also risen. He faced Mustafa and formed a fist.

"I will try it."

In-gong jumped down from the draco instead of rushing in. He took the posture of Beast Authority and activated Divine Beast Authority.

A pure white aura...

It flowed between the red and yellow lights of Earth Quaker.

The green light originated from Green Wind.

In-gong, who was covered in various buffs, beckoned to Mustafa as a taunt.

Mustafa couldn't stand it. He roared again and rushed toward In-gong.

It was an unbelievable speed for someone over four meters tall. He was like a runaway train.

In-gong glared as he stared at what was before him. Green Wind read Mustafa's trajectory.

She determined whether it was a front, side or diagonal direction.

In-gong kicked against the ground. He estimated Mustafa's trajectory and rolled on the ground. He jumped up and struck the lower half of Mustafa accurately on the side.

The power of an explosion!

Kwaang!

Aura exploded and Mustafa's body flew up approximately one meter in a diagonal direction. However, shortly afterwards, Mustafa swung at In-gong's head.

In-gong managed to avoid the attack intuitively. It was impossible to damage the lower half that was covered with thick scales. Moreover, Mustafa's reflexes were surprising. He rose one meter in a diagonal line because he jumped at the moment of the attack. Although the angle meant the attack wasn't fully received, the performance was clear.

It was true for the shocked Mustafa. In-gong's blow had far exceeded Mustafa's expectation. Mustafa raised his scythe again like he was hiding the pain. Rather than stopping Mustafa's attacks, In-gong ran to Mustafa in order to limit his trajectory.

'Don't drag this out for a long time.'

Due to the various buffs, his stats skyrocketed but it was taking a toll on his body. Moreover, he was now in an evasive fight, so his concentration was being exhausted quickly. A long fight was disadvantageous for In-gong.

He needed to finish it with one shot. He would finish the fight by aiming a blow at the upper body.

In-gong focused the white aura on his right arm. He didn't just focus on the explosion but condensed it on Earth Quaker. The white light surrounded Earth Quaker and it made a noise like an engine from a sports car.

Mustafa sensed the danger and sped up his attacks while In-gong continued to flee from the attacks. Mustafa got angry then and covered his scythe with a purple light.

One hit would kill In-gong.

At that moment, the scythe struck like a thunderbolt. In-gong barely evaded it and Mustafa opened his mouth. It wasn't a mere roar, but a distinctive drake ogre battle cry that caused mental collapse.

Mustafa aimed a wild blow at him but this was a chance for In-gong. As soon as the battle cry emerged, the Tears of a Dark Elf hanging from his neck turned purple and blocked Mustafa's spiritual attack.

He would take this chance.

In-gong responded immediately. He didn't hesitate to run toward the blow.

"Carack!"

It wasn't a mere cry; he was using a skill.

The King's Knights- Call!

Carack appeared in the space in front of In-gong. Carack was baffled by the sudden move but he was an orc. Instead of asking what had happened while facing Mustafa, he followed his warrior's instinct.

"Kuraha!"

He shouted loudly and struck Mustafa's leg with an axe. Although the blade didn't entirely hit, Mustafa's legs buckled momentarily. At that moment, In-gong leapt forward. He ran up the back of the trusty Carack and looked down on Mustafa.

Mustafa raised his head quickly and saw In-gong who then pulled back his right fist and used his hidden card.

'Telekinesis!'

Mustafa's head twisted. It was only a few centimeters at most, but that was enough. Mustafa lost sight of In-gong and was unable to respond properly due to the sudden event. In-gong's hand stretched out and hit Mustafa's head.

It was something other than the power of an explosion. The condensed aura and power in Earth Quaker exploded at once!

Gigantic Piston!

Earth Quaker howled. There was a loud roar as the condensed aura emerged. The intensity didn't just penetrate the giant Mustafa's head, but his whole body as well.

Mustafa's head exploded. His four legs couldn't endure the power and broke.

In-gong then landed on the ground. He was exhausted because he had consumed too much of his aura at once. However, he didn't collapse. He breathed roughly and raised his head.

Mustafa's body, however, collapsed. He fell to the ground with a great sound and a purple light rose up from his body. It soared into the sky and scattered into pieces.

The drake ogres screamed. The casios had lost the purple aura around them and cried out in confusion.

In-gong, who was breathing roughly, didn't hear any of those noises. It was because a clear voice had entered In-gong's ears.

[Your level has risen.]

The white light wrapped around In-gong's body.



# Chapter 50

## Advent #8

[Boss: Drake Ogre Mustafa has been defeated.]  
[Title: Drake Ogre Slayer has been acquired.]

It was a clear declaration of victory as much as his level up had showed.

“Hoo.”

In-gong breathed out. The level up bonus restored his full strength but Below the King’s Flag consumed his mental power.

‘It is a good thing I leveled up since I almost fainted.’

Gigantic Piston consumed a tremendous amount of aura and strength.

‘But isn’t this just the beginning?’

In order to use the super special weapons built into various weapons, a super special control skill was essential. In-gong didn’t have a super special control skill, so Gigantic Piston wasn’t Earth Quaker’s super special skill.

There was one step higher, maybe it was even a few steps.

‘As expected from the six elder dragons.’

In-gong squeezed lightly and admired his right hand. Dragon Blood was released, so Earth Quaker was back to its original form.

‘Gigantic Piston is quite good. Right now, the main focus is explosion... I wish I can meet Chris and Caitlin again soon. There are too many skills for me to learn.’

There were various techniques in Divine Beast Authority besides the power of

explosion. Having a variety of skills was important in Knight Saga, but he also needed to use them at the right spot.

‘Yes, Telekinesis.’

Just before the final blow, he had used Telekinesis to freeze Mustafa. It was a very wonderful usage, so In-gong smiled as he thought about it.

"Is it over now?"

A voice interrupted In-gong's thoughts. He saw Carack holding the dwarf axe.

“Carack!”

In-gong cried out enthusiastically and Carack gave a hearty laugh as he said,

"Your Highness, didn't you tell me to defend the temple?"

That was correct. It was only 10 minutes ago.

"I'm sorry. I love you. You are the best."

In-gong laughed while Carack stepped back with his hands raised.

"Enough, I like women. Prince, I should go back."

"Yes, please take care of the temple once again."

"Understood. And I guessed I missed the right timing, but congratulations on your victory."

Carack turned around and starting running toward the small temple.

‘He is really trustworthy.’

In-gong watched Carack's back and opened the mini-map to look at the battle. He had spent too much time thinking.

The change after Mustafa's defeat was great. The drake ogres that had witnessed

Mustafa's collapsed started moving to get away rather than fight aggressively. They started to be pushed by the treants who didn't feel any emotions.

While In-gong and Carack were talking, the situation had changed suddenly.

The casios weren't much different from the drake ogres. Once the purple aura that paralyzed their reasoning disappeared, they started to feel fear again. It was impossible for them to attack while fearing death now.

That wasn't the only problem. The casios had lost their herd unity. The leaders formed groups consisting of dozens of casios and made different judgements.

The casios that appeared on Enger Plains originally had a chief leading all the leaders. However, this time, there wasn't a leader for the entire group of casios due to losing Mustafa.

Some of the casios leaders chose to run away while other casios leaders chose to fight the centaurs in front of them.

Each group of casios were moving in their own way, so they couldn't fight properly. The casios were in the midst of a terrible confusion and couldn't exert their combat power properly.

The battlefield was leaning to one side. Even so, the battle wasn't finished. There were several types of victories, so now was the time to reduce the damage to his allies.

He heard Green Wind's voice.

'My temporary master. I am amazed at your dancing. Can I give a little more strength to my children? I beg this favour of you.'

In short, she wanted to help the centaurs.

In-gong nodded and blew a whistle. Like he had expected, the draco started running toward In-gong.

"Really smart."

Did Felicia use magic to increase its intelligence?

In-gong touched the Tears of the Dark Elves hanging from his neck and climbed on the draco's back.

The centaurs were pushing the casios backs. Despite the considerable distance, In-gong could see where Ferocious Eyes was fighting at a glance. The centaur tribe chief was literally wiping out the casios. He could see the blue aura coming from Ferocious Eyes.

Green Wind whispered again.

'My temporary master. There is something that can be done now that Ainkel's magic is activated. I'll pass on your merit to the children on the battlefield. Your victory will cause their morale to significantly rise. My children's hearts will be won by your merits like I was.'

In-gong allowed it. The green light around In-gong scattered and he felt Green Wind head toward the centaurs.

Not long after, she talked to them.

"9th Prince!"

"Agent of Green Wind!"

"His Highness the 9th Prince is with us!"

The centaurs shouted. Their cries tangled together and became a victory roar that shook the entire battlefield.

In-gong felt the gaze of Ferocious Eyes. In-gong raised his fist in triumph and moved the draco.

The battle continued until nighttime. It was a great success that no one could deny.

Large flames rose in the night sky above the plains.

The centaurs stacked up firewood around the small temple and lit a fire. It was in order to celebrate the victory and honour the souls of those who had died in the battle.

The chiefs of the other three tribes rushed over when they heard the news, bringing plentiful amounts of meat. The warriors of the Mighty Fire tribe had their blood heated by the battle and cooled it with alcohol.

"9th Prince was looking at me!"

"No, he was looking at me!"

Two centaur warriors argued drunkenly among themselves. In fact, it wasn't just two people. Almost all the warriors of the Mighty Fire tribe were excited to exchange glances with In-gong.

It wasn't because In-gong was a prince. It wasn't only because he had played a decisive role in a battle.

It was because In-gong was the guardian of Green Wind, making him the guardian of Enger Plains.

Green Wind had chosen In-gong. Thanks to him, a miracle had occurred as trees rose from the ground to fight the enemy.

Green Wind had also passed on In-gong's merits to them. For the warriors of the Mighty Fire tribe, In-gong was seen as the incarnation of Green Wind.

"They respect you. There is a sincere look of respect."

As Karma spoke to In-gong, her red cheeks showed she was also drunk. She was greatly moved by everything that happened today.

Normally, she gave off a tough impression, so it was cute to see her drunk expression in front of the fire. Carack laughed and touched In-gong's arm gently.

"Prince, your popularity is great."

"9th Prince did a great job. It is a natural reaction."

Ferocious Eyes responded. He seemed unbelievably soft compared to how he looked at Zephyr in Knight Saga.

The transformation was quite shocking to the other tribe chiefs. The three chiefs of the Heavy Winds, Heavy Rain and Rough Night tribes couldn't move their gazes away from Ferocious Eyes' face.

"No one else has completed the casios subjugation task so quickly. It is clearly the shortest time."

Karma said, clasping her hands together. It wasn't flattery but a clear remark.

In-gong had only arrived yesterday, yet the task was completed today. He finished the subjugation task in two days.

The warriors of the four tribes were originally planning to gather in three days, so it was a clear record.

In-gong could imagine the reactions of Isabella and Caitlin. There was also a smile on In-gong's face.

"Carack, I will get some rest first."

As In-gong stood up, Karma and the centaurs gazed at him. Ferocious Eyes looked regretful that In-gong was leaving so early, while the chiefs of the three tribes were amazed that Ferocious Eyes was making that look.

Carack maintained his composure and replied,

"You had a hard time today, so sleep well. A good night's sleep is essential for growth."

In-gong had never thought Carack would make a remark about his growth spurt here. In-gong laughed and hit Carack's shoulder.

"Yes, you should grow as well."

"Rest well."

"Good night."

Ferocious Eyes and Karma also said goodbye to him. After saying goodbye to them and

the centaurs who were reluctant to let him leave, In-gong entered the small temple where his quarters were.

The temple was very quiet. It was a sharp contrast to the loud centaurs who were drunk.

However, In-gong felt comfort instead of discomfort because he knew why it was quiet. Green Wind had moved the wind around the temple to block off all of the surrounding sound.

In-gong sat on the bed that Carack had arranged for him beforehand and gazed at the tree trunks in the center of the temple.

“Green Wind.”

“Wouldn’t it be better to talk tomorrow? You seem a bit tired.”

He called out and Green Wind came. She was now sitting beside In-gong.

“It’s okay. There are a few things I want to thank Green Wind for.”

In the first place, he hadn’t gone there to rest. Green Wind was the reborn piece of Ainkel, so there were many things he wanted to ask her.

Green Wind stared at In-gong before nodding slowly.

“I understand, my temporary master. Then before we talk, can you release your control over me?”

In order to help In-gong in today’s battle, Green Wind had temporarily agreed to be ruled by him. In-gong nodded because he couldn’t bring her with him.

“I understand. Please wait a moment... Eh?”

“Temporary master, what is it? You seem to be very confused about something.”

She saw it straight away. In-gong was baffled.

In-gong had obviously conquered Green Wind. It wasn’t possible to define what

conquest was, but it was true that he had dominated Green Wind in a manner similar to Thunder Heaven Anvil and Earth Quaker. There was no difficulty because Green Wind had accepted the conquest.

However, there was a problem.

"The control, how do I release it?"

Green Wind blinked at In-gong's question, then stared at him blankly.

"You are my temporary master, not a permanent one! Find a way!"



# Chapter 51

## Advent #9

"You are my temporary master, not a permanent one! Find a way!"

Green Wind stood up and shouted. The wind blew around her as she was quite agitated and her green hair flew up like flames.

In-gong waved his hands and cried out,

"Wait a minute, wait a minute! Just calm down."

"Understood."

Green Windy responded promptly and really sat back down. In-gong coughed a few times before asking Green Wind,

"Green Wind, what is your current state?"

All the things In-gong had conquered so far didn't have a will, so it was impossible for them to speak. Due to that, In-gong didn't know exactly how he had 'conquered Green Wind'.

Green Wind looked up at In-gong with doe-like, clear eyes and said in a natural tone.

"I am yours. So, I have to submit to you. You can do whatever you please."

Green Wind spoke casually but In-gong's perspective was different. In-gong knew she was trying to calm down.

"Watch me."

Instead of looking at Green Wind, In-gong stared at the tree trunks and took deep breaths.

"Okay. Let's talk again. Anyway, is it that uncomfortable to be dominated by me? Things have changed."

"It isn't about my abilities or status. I need to exist here as Green Wind."

Green Wind stood up again and pointed at herself.

"My master, if I am gone, Enger Plains will lose its colour. I am a piece of Watcher Ainkel and the symbol of her magic on the Enger Plains."

Watcher Ainkel had two magic spells on Enger Plains.

One was the magic of life that turned a desert into the Enger Plains and the other was the magic to protect Enger Plains that In-gong used today.

Green Wind had become a separate existence from Ainkel, so she was separate from the protection magic, but the magic of life was different.

She had kept watch over the Enger Plains for a long time and became closely related to the life magic that kept it green. She was like the biggest cog that kept a machine spinning precisely.

In the first place, she was concentrating mostly on the magic of life and helping In-gong, instead of fighting the monsters directly.

After hearing Green Wind's explanation, In-gong came up with the simplest solution.

"Well, okay. Then can't I just leave you behind at Enger Plains? You don't have to leave with me."

The Thunder Light Anvil was left in its original spot and nothing else happened. In-gong had no intention of taking Green Wind if it would turn Enger Plains into a desert again.

However, Green Wind became greatly panicked by In-gong's words and her face seemed like someone losing their country.

"Master, are you planning on abandoning me?"

If he nodded, he would feel like a bad guy as 'leave here' was interpreted as 'abandoning her'.

"Uh... Wait a minute. Green Wind, do you want to go with me?"

In response to In-gong's question, Queen Wind replied decisively like there was nothing to think about.

"Whether it is temporary or permanent, you are still my master. It is natural to join you."

It wasn't simply a matter of likes or dislikes. In the first place, she couldn't act separately from In-gong.

'Thinking about it... is this a spirit contract?'

In-gong examined Green Wind again. She had the appearance of a beautiful woman but she wasn't a person. As Green Wind's name suggested, she seemed to be a wind spirit.

'Okay, well it isn't a bad thing. It is good.'

She was a big help in today's battle. There was no reason for In-gong to resist.

'All that is left is solving the problem.'

In-gong was troubled and asked Green Wind who was sitting next to him,

"Green Wind, you said that you are the magic symbol of Enger Plains?"

"I did."

"Then can you make another presence to replace you?"

A new spinning cog would be created to fill in the absence caused by Green Wind.

Green Wind started to think seriously about In-gong's idea. It seemed like she had never thought of creating something to replace her before.

'Actually, it would be strange if she had thought of it.'

She had been the guardian of Enger Plains for hundreds of years. She thought she would always maintain Enger Plains' greenness, so she hadn't thought of another existence.

Some time passed and she frowned after pondering it for a while.

"It might be possible, but if I do that, I won't be very helpful to Master for a while. I will have to leave almost all my power behind on the Enger Plains. If I stay with Master, I will regain my strength someday... I don't know when that will be."

It was a bit disappointing but within the expected range, so In-gong nodded.

"Then do so."

"I feel somewhat sad doing this. However, I will follow Master's will."

She pouted and fell silent like she was really sulking.

In-gong smiled and asked involuntarily,

"Will it take a long time?"

"I've never tried it before, so there is no guarantee. My guess is that it requires three or four days."

Well, it would take some time to clean up this situation. They had to sweep up the runaway casios and dragon ogres as well as decide how to manage the protection magic in the small temple.

'I don't know if someone will come from the Demon King's Palace.'

After securing the Thunder Light Anvil, there were dark elves sent for the sole purpose of exploring the ruins. It was highly possible that the Demon King's Palace would send an expert to manage it.

In-gong wandered about who might be sent from the Demon King's Palace. Although he didn't know everyone in the Demon King's Palace, he was able to recall the rough

profiles of some competent people.

However, he didn't think about it for long. After sitting back and watching In-gong, Green Wind was reminded of his first purpose.

"Master said there were things you wanted to ask. I am ready for Master's questions."

That was the reason he had entered his sleeping quarters despite not sleeping until the late hours normally.

In-gong stared at Green Wind's face before starting the questioning. She had been reborn but her essence was still the fragment of Ainkel. The mysterious eyes in the beautiful face reminded him of Ainkel who he had seen in the illusion.

"How and when did Ainkel die?"

Green Wind smiled and replied to In-gong's question,

"I am a fragment. Moreover, I was reborn again as another existence, so I don't have a lot of Ainkel's memories. I only remembered that she was murdered around 1,000 years ago."

An elder dragon with the power of a god was allegedly killed.

It was a huge story, so it had naturally been left unanswered. If those great beings died of old age, he would have felt a sense of discomfort.

"I can't remember who murdered Watcher Ainkel, but it is clear that it wasn't another elder dragon."

Then who did it? Who murdered an elder dragon that had the power of a god?

In-gong questioned it. Green Wind no longer remembered, so there was no answer to his question. Moreover, it was a story that had occurred a thousand years ago.

"Is that your only question?"

"Nope, I have two more."

"Is that so? Then Master, ask me comfortably. It is likely that this will be permanent instead of temporary, so it will be uncomfortable if Master doesn't feel at ease when talking to me."

Green Wind was strangely sincere in some areas. In-gong smiled playfully at her and said,

"I understand. I'll do that. Then from now on, shall I talk to you casually?"

"What is Master's question?"

Green Wind was unconcerned by In-gong's teasing. She looked pretty cute, so In-gong got to the main point.

"As you know, I absorbed Ainkel's power. Her power is flowing through my body."

"That's right. The power of an elder dragon is nestled in Master's body.

Dragon humanoid - a body that could accept a dragon's magic power.

This time, he had used almost all of Ainkel's magic power to transform his body. But if he found another piece of Ainkel, then it would be possible to absorb it.

However, In-gong's thoughts didn't end here.

"Then... apart from Ainkel, can I absorb the power of other elder dragons?"

There wasn't just one but six elder dragons.

Not all of them would have left a piece behind like Ainkel. Instead, it was highly likely that their power existed in objects like Earth Quaker.

'I might be able to receive some of the power of Queian himself like Locke did.'

Earth Quaker had responded to Ainkel's strength and revealed part of its mystery. What would happen if he gathered the strengths of the six elder dragons to create a synergy effect?

Green Wind smiled softly at In-gong's question.

"It is generally impossible, but Master seems to be different."

In-gong tilted his head and listened. Green Wind grabbed In-gong's right hand and explained,

"You have the power of Watcher Ainkel and the Great Enkidu. Normally, they can't get along with each other. However, Master can deal with both of them. If you mastered both Ainkel's and Enkidu's powers, then you can also use the power of the other elder dragons."

He could stimulate Enkidu and Ainkel's magic power. Rather, it was very easy for him to stimulate it.

However, it was impossible to enchant Earth Quaker with Ainkel's magic power. It was like strengthening a fire spirit with a water spirit.

Why was such a thing possible for In-gong?

'Is it my Protagonist occupation?'

In-gong's main occupation was Protagonist. There was also the addition of the power of Conquest.

Something was strange, but it was difficult to find more convincing reasons.

'Okay, it is like this.'

Then he would gather the powers of the six elder dragons. They had god-like strength, so he could surpass both Locke and Zephyr.

"Master's eyes are burning with ambition."

Green Wind said the same thing as Carack. In-gong coughed before leaning back again. Yet, one last question remained.

"Green Wind, how did you get conquered by me?"

"Conquered? If I was to speak of the process... it is Master's strength, not mine. I just

obeyed Master without resisting your power.”

It was an answer he expected. So, In-gong asked once again,

“Then do you know anything about this power that I have?”

Conquest.

The golden-crowned female with white hair.

The power of domination.

Green Wind spoke gently, closing her eyes instead of showing any positive or negative emotion.

“As I mentioned, I don’t have all of Ainkel’s memories. This is why I have incomplete knowledge about Master’s power.”

A light shone in In-gong’s eyes. Having incomplete knowledge was different from having no knowledge at all. The fact that Green Wind had some concept of Conquest meant that a Conquest Knight and Conquest weren’t things that had just popped up suddenly.

“Conquest. Yes, it is Conquest. If I had to name Master’s power, it would be Conquest.”

Green Wind opened her eyes again. Her green eyes seemed more similar to Ainkel than before.

She told In-gong,

“It is the power of a king to conquer and rule over all things. It is your strength. The Conquest Knight, born with the fate of a king.”

It wasn’t Green Wind but Ainkel’s voice.

In-gong’s eyes widened. However, the conversation didn’t continue any longer. After a moment, Green Wind, who had Ainkel’s eyes and voice, fell unconscious. Fortunately, it didn’t seem like anything serious had happened to her.



‘A king’s strength.’

In-gong closed his eyes. He felt like he had just heard something extremely important.



PDF by: traitorAIZEN